

- UNIX is a registered trademark licensed by X/Open Company Ltd. in the U.S. and other countries.
- "Adobe" and "PostScript" are registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in many countries.
- "Solaris" are trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc.
- "SPARCstation" is a trademark of SPARC International, Inc.
- "HP-UX" is a trademark of Hewlett Packard Company.
- "Linux" is a registered trademark or trademark owned by Mr. Linus Torvalds in the U.S.A. and other countries.
- "Red Hat" is a registered trademark of Red Hat, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries.
- "RyuminL-KL" and "Chu-gothic-BBB" are trademarks of Morisawa Co., Ltd.
- "Helvetica", "Palatino" and "Times" are trademarks of Linotype-HellAG and its subsidiary company.
- "ITC Avant Garde", "ITC Bookman", "ITC Zapf Chancery" and "ITC Dingbats" are registered trademarks of International Typeface Corporation.
- All product/brand names are registered trademarks or trademarks of the respective holders.

Important

1. This manual may not be reproduced in any form, whole or part without the prior written consent of Fuji Xerox Asia Pacific Pte Ltd.
2. Fuji Xerox Asia Pacific Pte Ltd reserves the right to change the contents of this manual at any time without prior notice.
3. Please contact Fuji Xerox Asia Pacific Pte Ltd if you find any errors, irregularities, or missing pages in this manual.

Safety regulations (regarding radio interference) vary from country to country, as such, this product and its consumables may be subject to penalties in some countries.

XEROX, The Document Company, Ethernet and Able are registered trademarks.

Preface

Thank you for purchasing a Fuji Xerox product.

To get the most out of the product, please read this manual in detail.

This manual provides information on the installation of the UNIX Driver and the print operations using the utility software.

The contents of this manual are prepared on the presumption that readers have a basic knowledge and understanding of workstations and the operating system (OS) environment.

Please note that the contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

May 2008
Fuji Xerox Asia Pacific Pte Ltd

Types of Manuals

The types of manuals available are as follows.

Manuals bundled with the main device:

These are bundled manuals that come with the device.

Manuals bundled with the accessories:

These are bundled manuals that come with the optional products.

These manuals contain information on the operations and setup of the optional products.

Commercially available manuals:

These manuals are purchased when necessary.

One such manual is a reference manual that provides information on the commands of printer (plotter) control languages.

A list of the manuals is included in the user manual that comes bundled with the main device.

For more information on the "Types of Manuals" refer to the user manual.

Using this Manual

■ Organization

The contents of each chapter are briefly described below.

Chapter 1	Overview This chapter describes the special features of the UNIX Driver and its functional environment.
Chapter 2	Installation This chapter explains how to install the UNIX Driver.
Chapter 3	Printing and Utility This chapter describes the print operations that use the UNIX Driver as well as the functions of the utility and how to use them.
Chapter 4	Precautions and Limitations This chapter describes the precautions and limitations pertaining to the use of the UNIX Driver.

Appendix

This section provides the following appendices for reference. Refer to them when necessary.

- Available Fonts
- Uninstalling the UNIX Driver

■ Conventions used in this manual

- (1) The following terms are used in this manual.
- | | |
|---------|---|
| Solaris | Solaris |
| Linux | Red Hat Linux |
| HP | HP-UX |
| Mono | Document Centre 250
Document Centre 451 |
| MonoSP | Document Centre 506
Document Centre 235 |
| Mono2 | DocuPrint 205
Document Centre 1085/1055/186/156
Document Centre 286/236
Document Centre 1100/900
Document Centre 336
DocuCentre 550 I/450 I
DocuCentre 750 I/650 I
ApeosPort 550 I/ 450 I/350 I
ApeosPort 750 I/650 I
DocuCentre-II 3005/2055/2005 |

DP240A	DocuPrint 240A
Important	Explains points to pay attention to. Be sure to read it before performing an operation.
See	Indicates where to find the reference items.
Note	Provides supplementary information.

(2) In this manual, an "interface board" refers to the following.

- An Ethernet 10BASE5, 10BASE2, 10BASE-T, or 100BASE-TX interface board.

(3) The following symbols are used in this manual.

" " This symbol indicates the name of a specific printer or host, a selection item of the menu or a reference item in this manual.
Example: Set "lp" here.
Select "1" to set up the network printer.
For more information on **Solaris/Linux**, refer to "2.4 Operation at the Remote Workstation (Linux)" and "2.5 Operation at the Remote Workstation (Solaris)".
For more information on **HP-UX**, refer to "3.3 Printing from the Logical Printer (HP-UX)"

< > This symbol indicates a key on the keyboard.
Example: Press the <Return> key.

" " This symbol indicates other manuals to be referred to.
Example: The internal format of the filter description file complies with the lpfiler description of "SunOS5.3 Reference Manual Section 1M. System Administration Commands".

(4) When a selection is to be made in response to a message, the default value of the selection is indicated within the parentheses [] as shown in the following example: [y]. In this case, when the <Return> key is pressed, the default value [y] will be selected. When it is selected and the <Return> key pressed, it will appear in boldface, such as the letter y in the following example.

Example: output-printer-name is '506PS' (y/n)[y]: **y**

(5) Text to be entered from the keyboard will be indicated in boldface, such as **"/usr/local/fxbin"** in the following example. In this case, unless otherwise specified, enter the <Return> key at the end.

Example: Enter the directory name [/user/lib/fxbin]: **/usr/local/fxbin**

Table of Contents

Preface	i
Types of Manuals	ii
Using this Manual	iii
Table of Contents.....	v

Chapter 1	Overview	1
1.1	About the UNIX Driver	3
1.1.1	Characteristics	3
1.1.2	Operating Environment	4
1.1.3	Target Printers	4
1.2	Before Using the UNIX Driver	6
1.2.1	Setting up from the Control Panel	6
1.2.2	Contents of the Package.....	7
Chapter 2	Installation	9
2.1	Before Installation	11
2.1.1	Prerequisites for Installation.....	11
2.1.2	Files Modified by the Installation	11
2.1.3	Printer Model Selected during Installation.....	12
2.1.4	Files Added during Installation	13
2.1.5	Installation Procedure Overview	19
2.2	Operation at the Local Workstation (Linux).....	21
2.2.1	Installing the Software.....	21
2.2.2	Adding in printcap during Installation	25
2.2.3	Setting Up a Printer.....	27
2.2.4	Setting Up Multiple Printers	28
2.2.5	Customizing printcap	29
2.3	Operation at the Local Workstation (Solaris)	30
2.3.1	Installation/Setting up a Printer	30
2.4	Operation at the Remote Workstation (Linux).....	35
2.4.1	Setting Up a Printer.....	36
2.4.2	Customizing printcap	37
2.5	Operation at the Remote Workstation (Solaris)	38
2.5.1	Installation/Setting up a Printer	39
2.6	Installation Procedure (HP-UX)	43
2.6.1	Installation Procedure	44
2.7	List of Error Messages.....	47

Chapter 3	Printing and Utility	49
3.1	Print Operations (Linux)	51
3.1.1	Using the UNIX Driver Utility Independently	51
3.1.2	Using Multiple UNIX Driver Utilities	52
3.2	Print Operations (Solaris)	54
3.2.1	Printing from Solaris	54
3.3	Print Operations from Logical Printer (HP-UX)	55
3.3.1	Printing from the Logical Printer (HP-UX)	55
3.3.2	List of Common Options (HP-UX)	57
3.3.3	Inherent Printer Options (HP-UX)	60
3.4	Utility Overview	119
3.4.1	List of Utilities	119
3.4.2	Utility Format	122
3.5	euc2ps2/txt2ps2 (Solaris/Linux/HP-UX)	123
3.6	sunras2ps2 (Solaris)	137
3.7	sunras2g4 (Solaris)	149
3.8	tiff2ps2 (Solaris/Linux/HP-UX)	158
3.9	tiff2g4 (Solaris/Linux/HP-UX)	169
3.10	xwd2ps2 (Solaris/Linux/HP-UX)	178
3.11	xwd2g4 (Solaris/Linux/HP-UX)	189
3.12	fxpif (Solaris/Linux)	199
3.13	fxpvf (Linux)	203
3.14	fxpg4f (Linux)	205
3.15	fxpof (Linux)	207
3.16	fxoption (Linux)	209
3.17	.userhomedir(Linux)	212
3.18	posteuc.fd (Solaris)	214
3.19	posteucSP.fd (Solaris)	216
3.20	posteuc205.fd (Solaris)	218
3.21	posttxt240A.fd (Solaris)	220
3.22	FXDC250.fd (Solaris)	222
3.23	FXDC451.fd (Solaris)	226
3.24	FXDC506.fd (Solaris)	229
3.25	FXDC235.fd (Solaris)	234
3.26	FXDP205.fd (Solaris)	238
3.27	FXDP240A.fd (Solaris)	244

3.28	FXDC186.fd (Solaris)	248
3.29	FXDC286.fd (Solaris)	254
3.30	FXDC1100.fd (Solaris)	261
3.31	FXDC336.fd (Solaris)	267
3.32	FXAP550I.fd/FXDC550I.fd (Solaris)	274
3.33	FXAP750I.fd/ FXDC750I.fd (Solaris)	281
3.34	FXDC23005.fd (Solaris)	289
3.35	FXAP4000.fd/FXDC4000.fd (Solaris)	295
3.36	FXAP27000.fd/ FXDC27000.fd (Solaris)	302
Chapter 4	Precautions and Limitations	309
4.1	During Installation	311
4.2	During Printing	312
Appendix	317	
A	Printing to Network Printers	319
A.1	Using the Sample Script	319
A.2	Using Solaris 2.4 or Later	319
B	Available Fonts	320
B.1	European Fonts	320
C	Uninstalling the UNIX Driver	328
C.1	Linux	328
C.2	Solaris	329
C.3	HP-UX	332
Glossary	333
Index	334

Chapter 1 Overview

1.1 About the UNIX Driver

This section describes the features of the UNIX Driver and its operating environment.

1.1.1 Characteristics

This UNIX Driver is a utility software which converts files created by the UNIX workstation into a format which conforms to the PostScript® language loaded in the printer. The UNIX Driver provides the software for converting EUC text files, SunRaster image files (only for Solaris), TIFF image files and XWD image files into PostScript language programs. In addition, the following output can be done with the use of the printer functions.

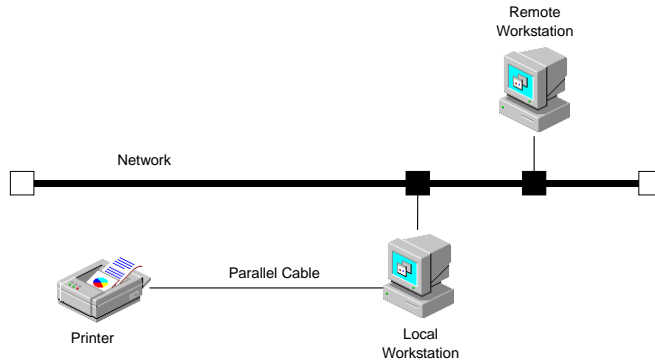
- ▶ Printing with paper feed selection
- ▶ Printing with paper output selection
- ▶ 2 Sided Print (only for models with the 2 Sided Print function)

The UNIX Driver can be used by specifying only the printer name, via the filter (Linux) that can be automatically started up by the `lpr` command; or the filter description file (Solaris) for starting up the filter automatically via the `lp` command; or via the interface program (HP-UX).

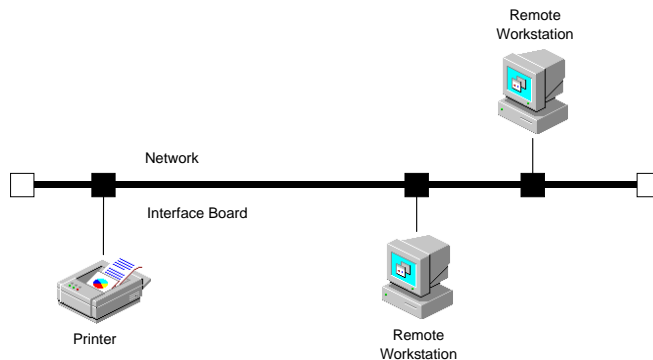
Important The UNIX Driver cannot be used by some printers, depending on the model and configuration of the printer.

1.1.2 Operating Environment

EUC text files, SunRaster image files (only for Solaris), TIFF image files and XWD image files received from a workstation connected to a printer by a serial or parallel cable (referred to as the local workstation hereafter), or from a printer located on the network (referred to as the remote workstation hereafter), can be converted into PostScript language programs and output to the printer.



In addition, the printer can be used in an environment directly connected to the network by installing an interface board on the printer.



1.1.3 Target Printers

The target printers include the following:

- ▶ Document Centre 250/350/400
451/551
506/606/706
235/285/405
1085/1055/186/156
286/236
1100/900
336

- ▶ DocuPrint 205/255/305
240A/340A
- ▶ DocuCentre 550 I/450 I
750 I/650 I
- ▶ ApeosPort 550 I/450 I/350 I
750 I/650 I
- ▶ DocuCentre-II 3005/2055/2005

Important The optional PostScript Kit is required.

1.2 Before Using the UNIX Driver

Check the following before using the UNIX Driver.

1.2.1 Setting up from the Control Panel

Before setting up the workstation, refer to the "User Guide" and set up the printer as described below.

Set the status of the port to be used to "On". (Mandatory)

If a serial port is to be used, input the communication parameters.

However, if an interface card is to be used, input the IP address. (Mandatory)

When a serial port is used, the required settings for the communication parameters are as follows.

- ▶ Adobe Protocol
- ▶ Baud Rate
- ▶ Data Length
- ▶ Stop Bits
- ▶ Parity
- ▶ Xon-Xoff Control
- ▶ DTR Control

Note In "Chapter 2 Installation", the explanation of operations at the workstation is based on the above settings set to the default values. For non-default cases, refer to the related manuals where necessary and carry out operations at the workstation accordingly.

Set the print mode to "PostScript". (Mandatory)

Set the receiving buffer memory size according to the operating environment.

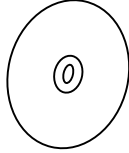
For printers where the TBCP filter can be specified (Yes (valid)/No (invalid)), set it to "Yes".

Note This setting is not required for some printers. For more information, refer to the printer manual.

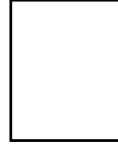
1.2.2 Contents of the Package

The following are included in the UNIX Driver package. Check the contents.

☐ CD-ROM



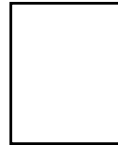
☐ Software License Agreement



☐ CD-ROM Guide



☐ Inquiries



☐ User Registration



Contact your vendor for any missing or damaged item.

Chapter 2 Installation

2.1 Before Installation

This section provides information needed to begin the installation.

2.1.1 Prerequisites for Installation

The following are the prerequisites for the installation.

- ▶ The supported OS will be as noted in the CD-ROM Guide.
- ▶ 20MB of free disk space is required, including temporary working space, during installation.
- ▶ The installation must be performed by a power user. Request the network administrator to perform the installation if you do not have the rights of a power user.
- ▶ The output printer must be registered with the system. [HP-UX]
The output printer can be registered by using commands such as SAM.
For more information, refer to HP-UX-related manuals.

2.1.2 Files Modified by the Installation (Linux)

The following files will be modified once the UNIX Driver is installed.

Directory	File Name
/etc	printcap

2.1.3 Printer Model Selected during Installation

Run the installation script and select the printer model. The printer models and their corresponding product names are as follows.

Printer Model	Name of Target Hardware Product
DC250	Document Centre 250/350/400
DC451	Document Centre 451/551
DC506	Document Centre 506/606/706
DC235	Document Centre 235/285/405
DP205	DocuPrint 205/255/305
DP240A	DocuPrint 240A/340A
DC186	Document Centre 1085/1055/186/156
DC286	Document Centre 286/236
DC1100	Document Centre 1100/900
DC336	Document Centre 336
DC550I	DocuCentre 550 I/450 I
DC750I	DocuCentre 750 I/650 I
AP550I	ApeosPort 550 I/450 I/350 I
AP750I	ApeosPort 750 I/650 I
DC23005	DocuCentre-II 3005/2055/2005
DC24000	DocuCentre-II 5010/4000
DC27000	DocuCentre-II 7000/6000
AP24000	ApeosPort-II 5010/4000/3000
AP27000	ApeosPort-II 7000/6000

2.1.4 Files Added during Installation

The following files will be added once the UNIX Driver is installed.

[Solaris] (The directories listed for storing filters are the default directories.)

In the case of Mono2, the file names will contain 205.

In the case of MonoSP, the file names will contain SP.

In the case of DP240A, the file names will contain 240A.

Directory	File Name	Contents
/usr/local/fxbin /usr/local/fxbin205 /usr/local/fxbin240A /usr/local/fxbinSP	euc2ps2	Text conversion filter
	txt2ps2	txt2ps2 text conversion filter (Only applicable for DocuPrint 240A/340A)
	sunras2ps2	SunRaster conversion filter
	sunras2g4	SunRaster conversion filter
	tiff2ps2	TIFF conversion filter
	tiff2g4	TIFF conversion filter
	xwd2ps2	XWD conversion filter
	xwd2g4	XWD conversion filter
	fxpif	Paper tray setting filter
/usr/local/fxbin/UFPDefault /usr/local/fxbin205/UFPDefault /usr/local/fxbin240A/UFPDefault /usr/local/fxbinSP/UFPDefault	ufptool* ¹	UXDriverPrintTool
	.UFPDefault* ¹	Default command option file for UXDriverPrintTool
/usr/lib/lp/postscript	posteuc	Symbolic link file that calls up euc2ps2 or txt2ps2
	posteuc205	
	posttxt240A	
	posteucSP	
	postfxps	Symbolic link file that calls up fxpif
	postfxps205	
	postfxps240A	
	posteucSP	
	fxbinpath* ¹	Directory description file for UXDriverPrintTool
	fxbinpath205* ¹	
	fxbinpath240A* ¹	
	fxbinpathSP* ¹	
/usr/lib/lp/model	Model interface program	Source file of the model interface program (stored as the printer model name during registration)

/etc/lp/interfaces	Model interface program	Model interface program (stored as the printer name during registration)
/etc/lp/fd	posteuc.fd	Filter description file for euc2ps2
	posteuc205.fd	Filter description file for euc2ps2
	posttxt240A.fd	Filter description file for txt2ps2
	posteucSP.fd	Filter description file for euc2ps2
	FXpostio.fd	fxpostio filter description file
	FXpostio205.fd	fxpostio filter description file
	FXpostio240A.fd	fxpostio filter description file
	FXpostioSP.fd	fxpostio filter description file
	FXdownload.fd	download filter description file
	FXdownload205.fd	download filter description file
	FXdownload240A.fd	download filter description file
	FXdownloadSP.fd	download filter description file
/etc/lp/fd	FXDC250.fd	For Document Centre 250/350/400 fxpif filter description file
	FXDC451.fd	For Document Centre 451/551 fxpif filter description file
	FXDC506.fd	For Document Centre 506/606/706 fxpif filter description file
	FXDC235.fd	For Document Centre 235/285/405 fxpif filter description file
	FXDP205.fd	For DocuPrint 205/255/305 fxpif filter description file
	FXDP240A.fd	For DocuPrint 240A/340A fxpif filter description file
	FXDC186.fd	For Document Centre 1085/1055/186/156 fxpif filter description file
	FXDC286.fd	For Document Centre 286/236 fxpif filter description file
	FXDC1100.fd	For Document Centre 1100/900 fxpif filter description file
	FXDC336.fd	For Document Centre 336 fxpif filter description file
	FXDC550I.fd	For DocuCentre 550 I/ 450 I fxpif filter description file
	FXDC750I.fd	For DocuCentre 750 I/650 I fxpif filter description file
	FXAP550I.fd	For ApeosPort 550 I/450 I/350 I fxpif filter description file
	FXAP750I.fd	For ApeosPort 750 I/650 I fxpif filter description file
	FXDC23005.fd	For DocuCentre-II 3005/2055/2005 fxpif filter description file
	FXDC24000.fd	For DocuCentre-II 5010/4000 fxpif filter description file

	FXDC27000.fd	For DocuCentre-II 7000/6000 fxpif filter description file
	FXAP24000.fd	For ApeosPort-II 5010/4000/3000 fxpif filter description file
	FXAP27000.fd	For ApeosPort-II 7000/6000 fxpif filter description file

*1) UXDriverPrintTool (ufptool) allows the user to run the UNIX Driver via a graphical user interface. For a detailed explanation on the UXDriverPrintTool, refer to the UXDriverPrintTool User Guide. Install the UXDriverPrintTool only on Solaris 7 or later.

[Linux] (The directories listed for storing filters are the default directories.)

In the case of Mono2, the file names will contain 205.

In the case of DP240A, the file names will contain 240A.

Directory	File Name	Contents
/usr/local/fxbin /usr/local/fxbin205 /usr/local/fxbin240A	euc2ps2	Text conversion utility
	txt2ps2	txt2ps2 text conversion filter (Only applicable for DocuPrint 240A/340A)
	xwd2ps2	XWD conversion utility
	xwd2g4	XWD conversion utility
	tiff2ps2	TIFF conversion utility
	tiff2g4	TIFF conversion utility
	fxoption	Command for modifying the default command option file
	ufptool ^{*1}	UXDriverPrintTool
/usr/local/fxbin/UFPDefault /usr/local/fxbin205/UFPDefault /usr/local/fxbin240A/UFPDefault	fxbinpath240A ^{*1}	Directory description file for UXDriverPrintTool (Only applicable for DocuPrint 240A/340A)
	.UFPDefault ^{*1}	Default command option file for UXDriverPrintTool
	Ufptool ^{*1}	UXDriverPrintTool resource file
/usr/X11R6/lib/X11/app-defaults /usr/lib/fxps usr/lib/fxps205 usr/lib/fxps240A	fxpif	Input filter
	fxpvf	XWD image output filter
	fxpof	Output filter
	fxpg4f	G4 format raster output filter
	fxpif_A3	Symbolic link file that calls up the fxpif filter for A3 paper
	fxpvf_A3	Symbolic link file that calls up the fxpvf filter for A3 paper
	fxpof_A3	Symbolic link file that calls up the fxpof filter for A3 paper
	fxpg4f_A3	Symbolic link file that calls up the fxpg4f filter for A3 paper
	fxpif_A4	Symbolic link file that calls up the fxpif filter for A4 paper
	fxpvf_A4	Symbolic link file that calls up the fxpvf filter for A4 paper
	fxpof_A4	Symbolic link file that calls up the fxpof filter for A4 paper
	fxpg4f_A4	Symbolic link file that calls up the fxpg4f filter for A4 paper
	fxoption_exec	File for overwriting all options in .fxpsdefault

	string_from_printcap	File for overwriting the contents of /etc/printcap
	fxbanner.ps	Banner output header file
	fxpif_sample.sh	"if" filter script sample for output to a printer connected via a network
	fxbinpath ^{*1}	Directory description file for UXDriverPrintTool
	fxbinpath205 ^{*1}	Directory description file for UXDriverPrintTool
/usr/lib/fxps/UserDefault	.fxpsdefault	Default command option file
/usr/lib/fxps205/UserDefault	.fxpsdefault205	Default command option file
/usr/lib/fxps240A/UserDefault	.fxpsdefault240A	Default command option file
	.userhomedir	Home directory setup file of user
/usr/local/fxetc	printcap.add	printcap file for adding samples
/usr/local/fxetc205		
/usr/local/fxetc240A		

^{*1}) UXDriverPrintTool (ufptool) allows the user to run the UNIX Driver via a graphical user interface. For a detailed explanation on the UXDriverPrintTool, refer to the UXDriverPrintTool User Guide.

[HP-UX] (The directories listed for storing filters are the default directories)

In the case of Mono2, the file names will contain 205.

In the case of DP240A, the file names will contain 240A.

Directory	File Name	Contents
/usr/local/uxbin	euc2ps2	Text conversion utility
	txt2ps2	txt2ps2 text conversion filter (Only applicable for DocuPrint 240A/340A)
	xwd2ps2	XWD conversion utility
/usr/local/uxbin205	xwd2g4	XWD conversion utility
/usr/local/uxbin240A	tiff2ps2	TIFF conversion utility
	tiff2g4	TIFF conversion utility
	ufptool ^{*1}	UXDriverPrintTool
/usr/local/uxbin/UXFPDefault	.UXFPDefault ^{*1}	Default command option file for UXDriverPrintTool
/usr/local/uxbin205/UXFPDefault		
/usr/lib/lp/postscript	fxbinpath ^{*1}	Directory description file for UXDriverPrintTool
	fxbinpath205 ^{*1}	Directory description file for UXDriverPrintTool
/usr/spool/lp/interface	Model interface program	Model interface program (stored as the name of the model interface program name and logical printer name during registration)

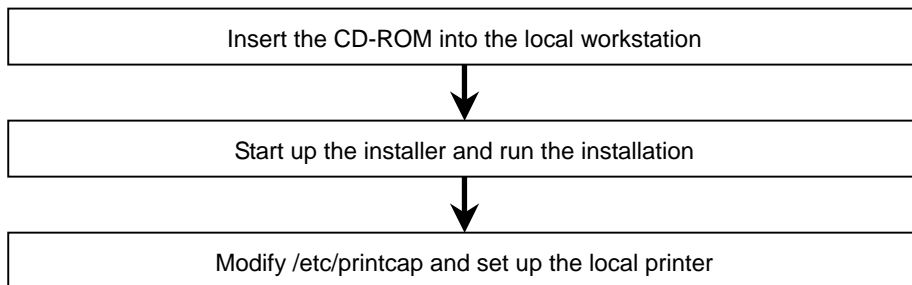
*1) UXDriverPrintTool (ufptool) allows the user to run the UNIX Driver via a graphical user interface.
For a detailed explanation on the UXDriverPrintTool, refer to the UXDriverPrintTool User Guide.

※ : UXDriverPrintTool for DocuPrint 240A/340A is not available for HP-UX.

2.1.5 Installation Procedure Overview

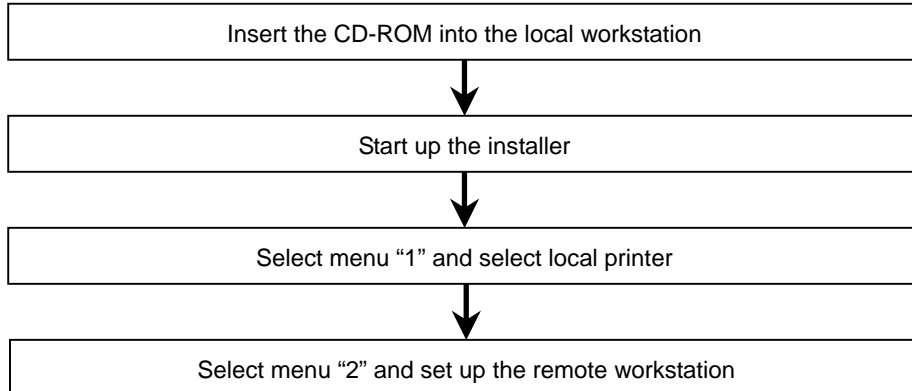
This section provides information on the installation of the UNIX Driver on a UNIX workstation. Set up the local workstation before using the printer from the local workstation or the remote workstation. To print from the remote workstation, set up the local workstation first followed by the remote workstation.

Operation at the local workstation (Linux)



See For more information, refer to "2.2 Operation at the Local Workstation (Linux)".

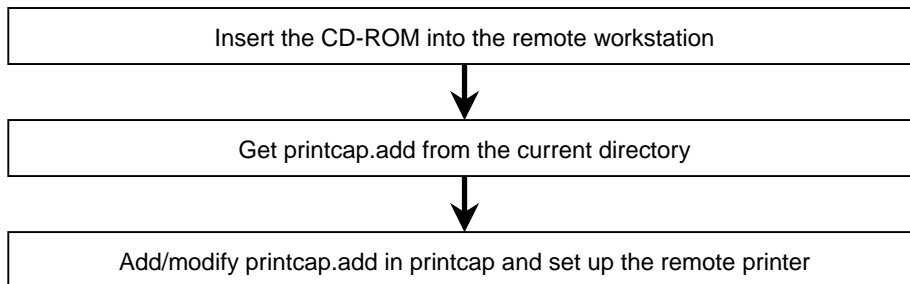
Operation at the local workstation (Solaris)



※ : This operation is required only when printing from the remote workstation.

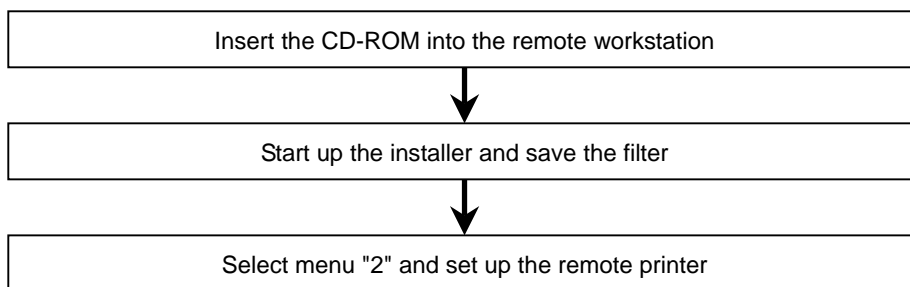
See For more information, refer to "2.3 Operation at the Local Workstation (Solaris)".

Operation at the remote workstation (Linux)



See For more information, refer to "2.4 Operation at the Remote Workstation (Linux)".

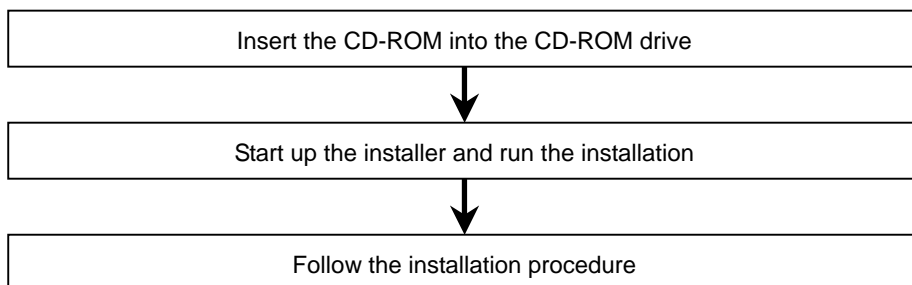
Operation at the remote workstation (Solaris)



See For more information, refer to "2.5 Operation at the Remote Workstation (Solaris)".

Operation at the remote workstation (HP-UX)

(The procedure is the same for using the printer from a local workstation or from a remote workstation.)

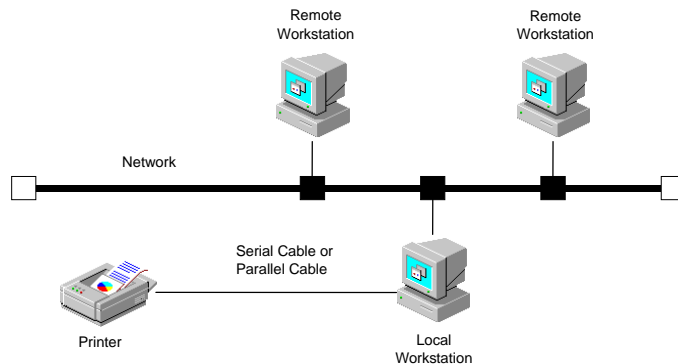


See For more information, refer to "2.6 Installation Procedure (HP-UX)".

2.2 Operation at the Local Workstation (Linux)

This section provides information on the operation at the local workstation (Linux). The following example shows an environment where a local workstation, which is connected to a printer via a serial or parallel cable, is used as a print server.

Important This section presumes that the communications parameters of the printer are set to the default values. For non-default cases, refer to the Linux related manuals when necessary.



2.2.1 Installing the Software

(1) Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive of the local workstation.

(2) Log on as a power user and retrieve the files required for installation from the CD-ROM.

Important Request the system administrator to perform the installation if you do not have the rights of a power user.

[Linux]

```
# mount /dev/cdrom /mnt/cdrom
# cd /tmp
# cp /mnt/cdrom/UXDRIVER.tar .
# tar xvf ./UXDRIVER.tar
```

The following files will be retrieved.

- ▶ README
- ▶ install.sh
- ▶ uxdriver.tar
- ▶ uxdriver2.tar
- ▶ uxdriver3.tar

- (3) Enter `./install.sh` and run the installer.

```
# ./install.sh
```

- (4) Select the printer model that corresponds to the printer to be used, as noted in "2.1.3 Printer Model Selected during Installation". In this example, "3" will be selected.

```
Printer Model?
  1. Document Centre 250/350/400
  2. Document Centre 451/551
  3. Document Centre 506/606/706
  4. Document Centre 235/285/405
  5. DocuPrint 205/255/305
  6. DocuPrint 240A/340A
  7. Document Centre 1085/1055/186/156
  8. Document Centre 286/236
  9. Document Centre 1100/900
 10. Document Centre 336
 11. ApeosPort 550 I/450 I/350 I
 12. DocuCentre 550 I/450 I
 13. ApeosPort 750 I/650 I
 14. DocuCentre 750 I/650 I
 15. DocuCentre-II 3005/2055/2005
 16. Binary update only
 17. Exit
Enter Process No (1/2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9/10/11/12/13/14/15/16/17)? : 3
```

- (5) You will be asked whether you want to install the filter. Enter `"y"`.

```
Install Filter? (y/n)[y] : y
```

Note If `[]` appears in a message, the default value will appear inside the `[]`. In this case, the default value will be selected once the `<Return>` key is pressed.

- (6) Specify the directory to install the filter file. To install in `/usr/lib/fxps`, press the `<Return>` key. To change, specify the directory. In this example, the directory will be changed to `/home/fxps`. The directory must be created when selecting the default directory.
(In the case of DocuPrint 205/255/305, the default directory is `/usr/lib/fxps205`. In the case of DocuPrint 240A/340A, the default directory is `/usr/lib/fxps240A`.)

```
Enter Library directory name [/usr/lib/fxps] : /home/fxps
```

- (7) Confirm the installation directory.

```
Directory is '/home/fxps' (y/n)[y] : y
```

- (8) Specify the directory to install the utility. To install in `/usr/local/fxbin`, press the `<Return>` key. To change, specify the directory. In this example, the directory will be changed to

"/home/fxbin".

(In the case of DocuPrint 205/255/305, the default directory is /usr/local/fxbin205. In the case of DocuPrint 240A/340A, the default directory is /usr/local/fxbin240A.)

```
Enter Binary directory name[/usr/local/fxbin] : /home/fxbin
```

- (9) Confirm the installation directory.

```
directory is '/home/fxbin'(y/n)[y] : y
```

- (10) Specify the directory to install printcap.add. To install in /usr/local/fxetc, press the <Return> key. To change, specify the directory. In this example, the directory will be changed to "/home/fxetc".

(In the case of DocuPrint 205/255/305, the default directory is /usr/local/fxetc205. In the case of DocuPrint 240A/340A, the default directory is /usr/local/fxetc240A.)

```
Enter etc directory name[/usr/local/fxetc] : /home/fxetc
```

- (11) Confirm the installation directory.

```
directory is '/home/fxetc'(y/n)[y] : y
```

The software will be installed.

[Linux]

```
euc2ps2.z
fxoption.z
xwd2ps2.z
fxbanner.ps.z
fxoption_exec.z
fxpif.z
fxpof.z
fxpvf.z
.fxpsdefault.z
printcap.add.z
```

Sample descriptions will be added in the printcap file.

```
*** Editing DC506 Environment files. ***
/etc/printcap ... done
```

See For information on the setup method to install the interface board on the printer and connect the printer to the network, refer to "Appendix A1 Using the Sample Script".

The original printcap is saved in the SAVED directory of the directory from which the installer was started up. If the installer is started up from /tmp, the following message will be displayed.

```
/etc/printcap
Original files is saved in '/tmp/SAVED'.

done.
```

With this, software installation is complete.

2.2.2 Adding in printcap during Installation

After installation, the following descriptions will be added in /etc/printcap.

(In the case of DocuPrint 205/255/305, fxps will become fxps205. In the case of DocuPrint 240A/340A, fxps will become fxps240A.)

```
##Typical local printer entry.
#LBP|Laser Press PS|No depends on TRAY and PAPER:\
# :lp=/dev/ttya:sd=/var/spool/lbp:\
# :br#9600:ms=-parity,ixon,ixany,-cstopb:\
# :rw:fc#0000374:fs#0000003:XC#0:XS#0040040:\
# :lf=/usr/adm/lpd-errs:af=/usr/adm/fxpsacct:\
# :of=/usr/lib/fxps/fxpof:\
# :if=/usr/lib/fxps/fxpif:\
# :vf=/usr/lib/fxps/fxpvf:\
# :sb:sf:mx#0:
#A4|Laser Press PS-A4|Select A4\
# :lp=/dev/ttya:sd=/var/spool/a4lpd:\
# :br#9600:ms=-parity,ixon,ixany,-cstopb:\
# :rw:fc#0000374:fs#0000003:XC#0:XS#0040040:\
# :lf=/usr/adm/lpd-errs:af=/usr/adm/fxpsacct:\
# :of=/usr/lib/fxps/fxpof_A4:\
# :if=/usr/lib/fxps/fxpif_A4:\
# :vf=/usr/lib/fxps/fxpvf_A4:\
# :sb:sf:mx#0:
#A3|Laser Press PS-A3|Select A3\
# :lp=/dev/ttya:sd=/var/spool/a3lpd:\
# :br#9600:ms=-parity,ixon,ixany,-cstopb:\
# :rw:fc#0000374:fs#0000003:XC#0:XS#0040040:\
# :lf=/usr/adm/lpd-errs:af=/usr/adm/fxpsacct:\
# :of=/usr/lib/fxps/fxpof_A3:\
# :if=/usr/lib/fxps/fxpif_A3:\
# :vf=/usr/lib/fxps/fxpvf_A3:\
# :sb:sf:mx#0:
##Typical remote printer entry.
#Symphony_LBP|Remote Laser Press PS LBP:\
# :lp=:rp=LBP:rm=symphony:sd=/var/spool/rlbp:\
# :lf=/usr/adm/rlpd-errs:mx#0:
#Symphony_A4|Remote Laser Press PS-A4:\
# :lp=:rp=A4:rm=symphony:sd=/var/spool/ra4lpd:\
# :lf=/usr/adm/rlpd-errs:mx#0:
#Symphony_A3|Remote Laser Press PS-A3:\
# :lp=:rp=A3:rm=symphony:sd=/var/spool/ra3lpd:\
```

```
# :lf=/usr/adm/rlpd-errs:mx#0:
##Sample entry for direct connection via network
#net_LBT|RemoteLaserPress|No depends on TRAY and PAPER:\
# :lp=/dev/null:sd=/var/spool/lbp:\
# :lf=/usr/adm/lpd-errs:af=/usr/adm/fxpsacct:\
# :of=/usr/lib/fxps/fxpof:\
# :if=/usr/lib/fxps/fxpif_sample.sh:\
# :vf=/usr/lib/fxps/fxpvf:\
# :sb:sf:mx#0:
#RLP|RemoteLaserPress|No depends on TRAY and PAPER:\
# :lp:rp=lp:rm=laserpress:sd=/var/spool/rlbp:\
# :lf=/usr/adm/rlpd-errs:mx#0:
```

2.2.3 Setting Up a Printer

Use the entries added in `/etc/printcap` to set up the local printer. The following example explains how to set the name of the printer as "A4".

Important In the case of Linux (LPRng), refer to the setup noted in a separate document.

- (1) Log on as a power user and remove # (comment-out) from the "A4" printer entries located under the "Typical local printer entry." of `/etc/printcap`.

```
A4|Laser Press PS-A4|Select A4:\
:lp=/dev/ttya:sd=/var/spool/a4lpd:\
:br#9600:ms=-parity,ixon,ixany,-cstopb:\
:rw:fc#0000374:fs#0000003:XC#0:XS#0040040:\
:lf=/usr/adm/lpd-errs:af=/usr/adm/fxpsacct:\
:of=/usr/lib/fxps/fxpof_A4:\
:if=/usr/lib/fxps/fxpif_A4:\
:vf=/usr/lib/fxps/fxpvf_A4:\
:sb:sf:mx#0:
```

Note If necessary, add `|lp|A4|Laser Press PS-A4|Select A4` as an entry to the default print lp.

Important Create the spool directory in a file system with ample space. If the size of spool directory is too small, large files may not be printed.

Important Create an empty file if the error log file `/usr/adm/lpd-errs` could not be found.

- (2) Create the spool directory specified in the printer entry, and change the owner and permission.

```
# cd /var/spool
# mkdir a4lpd
# chown daemon.daemon a4lpd
# chmod 755 a4lpd
```

- (3) Create the error log file specified in the printer entry.

```
# cd /usr/adm; touch lpd-errs
# chmod 644 lpd-errs
```

Important Create the directory if it could not be found.

With this, local printer setup is complete.

2.2.4 Setting Up Multiple Printers

"2.2.3 Setting Up a Printer" explained the setup for only the "A4" printer. To set up multiple printers, a spool directory must be created for each printer. Spool directories for the multiple printers can be conveniently created together as shown below.

Important In the case of Linux (LPRng), refer to the setup noted in a separate document.

In the case of /bin/sh

[Linux]

```
# cd /var/spool
# for i in lbp a4lpd a3lpd
> do
> mkdir $i;chown daemon.daemon $i;chmod 755 $i
> done
#
```

In the case of /bin/csh

[Linux]

```
# foreach i (lbp a4lpd a3lpd)
foreach? mkdir $i;chown daemon. daemon $i;chmod 755 $i
foreach? end
#
```

2.2.5 Customizing printcap

"2.2.3 Setting Up a Printer" explained the setup method that uses the default settings of the communications parameters of the printer and the default entries added to `/etc/printcap` during installation. Change the underlined sections below if the communications parameters of the printer are not the default values, or the user wishes to assign the printer name, connection port or spool directory. However, do not edit sections that are not underlined.

(In the case of Mono2, `fxps` will become `fxps205`. In the case of DP240A, `fxps` will become `fxps240A`.)

Important In the case of Linux (LPRng), refer to the setup noted in a separate document.

[Linux]

```
A4|Laser Press PS-A4|Select A4:\
:lp=/dev/ttyS1:sd=/var/spool/a4lpd:\
:br#9600:ms=-parity,ixon,ixany,-cstopb:\
:rw:fc#0000374:fs#0000003:XC#0:XS#0040040:\
:lf=/usr/adm/lpd-errs:af=/usr/adm/fxpsacct:\
:of=/usr/lib/fxps/fxpof_A4:\
:if=/usr/lib/fxps/fxpif_A4:\
:vf=/usr/lib/fxps/fxpvf_A4:\
:sb:sf:mx#0:
```

Note The printer name will be described in the initial field of `/etc/printcap`. To specify multiple printer names, separate them with "|".

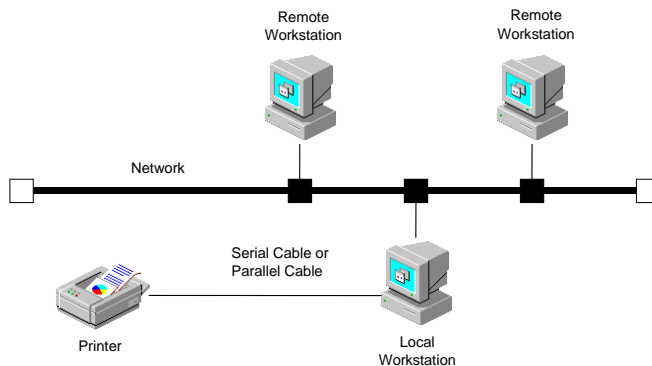
Note The connection port is specified by "lp= connection port device file".

Note The spool directory is specified by "sd=absolute path of created directory". The directory specified here must be created before using the printer. The owner name and group name must be changed to daemon and the permission changed to 755.

2.3 Operation at the Local Workstation (Solaris)

This section provides information on the operation procedures at the local workstation (Solaris). The following example shows an environment where a local workstation, which is connected to a printer via a serial or parallel cable, is used as a print server.

Important This section presumes that the communications parameters of the printer are set to the default values. For non-default cases, refer to the SunOS related manuals where necessary.



2.3.1 Installation/Setting up a Printer

- (1) Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive of the local workstation.
- (2) Set up the environment variable LANG.

In the case of /bin/csh

```
setenv LANG C
```

In the case of /bin/sh

```
LANG=C;export LANG
```

- (3) Log on as a power user and retrieve the installation script from the CD-ROM.

Important Request the system administrator to perform the installation if you do not have the rights of a power user.

```
# cd /tmp
# cp /cdrom/cdrom0/UXDRIVER.tar .
# tar xvf ./UXDRIVER.tar
```


The following files will be retrieved.

- ▶ README
- ▶ install.sh
- ▶ uxdriver.tar
- ▶ uxdriver2.tar
- ▶ uxdriver3.tar
- ▶ uxdriver4.tar

- (4) Enter `./install.sh` and run the installer.

```
# ./install.sh
```

- (5) Select the printer model that corresponds to the printer to be used, as noted in "2.1.3 Printer Model Selected during Installation". In this example, "2" will be selected.

```
Printer Model?
  1. Document Centre 250/350/400
  2. Document Centre 451/551
  3. Document Centre 506/606/706
  4. Document Centre 235/285/405
  5. DocuPrint 205/255/305
  6. DocuPrint 240A/340A
  7. Document Centre 1085/1055/186/156
  8. Document Centre 285/235
  9. Document Centre 1100/900
 10. Document Centre 336
 11. ApeosPort 550 I/450 I/350 I
 12. DocuCentre 550 I/450 I
 13. ApeosPort 750 I/650 I
 14. DocuCentre 750 I/650 I
 15. DocuCentre-II 3005/2055/2005
 16. Binary update only
 17. Exit
Enter Process No (1/2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9/10/11/12/13/14/15/16/17)? : 2
```

- (6) The following menu will be displayed. Select "1" and set up the local printer.

```
Solaris Installation for DC451
  1. Set Local Printer
  2. Set Remote Printer
Enter Process No (1/2)? : 1
```

- (7) Enter the device name of the connection port. Let's use Port A.

```
Enter port-device-name? [/dev/term/a] : [/dev/term/a]
```

Important "/dev/term/a" is an example. Specify the device file for the environment.

Note If [] appears in a message, the default value will appear inside the []. In this case, the default value will be selected only when only the <Return> key is pressed.

- (8) Enter the printer name. Let's register with "DC451".

```
Enter printer-name? [DC451] : [DC451]  
Printer-name is ' DC451' (y/n)[y] : y
```

- (9) Specify the directory to install the utility. To install in /usr/local/fxbin, press the <Return> key. To change, specify the directory. In this example, the directory will be changed to "/home/fxbin". The /usr/local directory must be created when selecting the default directory. (In the case of Mono2 and MonoSP, the default directory is /usr/local/fxbin205 and /usr/local/fxbinSP respectively. In the case of DP240A, the default directory is /usr/local/fxbin240A.)

```
Enter Binary directory name [/usr/local/fxbin] : /home/fxbin
```

- (10) Confirm the installation directory.

```
directory is '/home/fxbin'(y/n)[y] : y
```

The software will be installed.

```
x euc2ps2.z, 21068 bytes, 42 tape blocks  
x fxpif.z, 22518 bytes, 44 tape blocks  
x sunras2ps2.z, 18850 bytes, 37 tape blocks  
x FXDC451.fd.z, 398 bytes, 1 tape blocks  
x FXdownload.fd.z, 221 bytes, 1 tape blocks  
x FXpostio.fd.z, 250 bytes, 1 tape blocks  
x posteuc.z, 321 bytes, 1 tape blocks
```

- (11) Re-register the filters. In the case of filters already registered with the system, the user will be asked whether to delete and register them again. To register them again, enter "y". Otherwise, enter "n". In this example, all filters will be re-registered.

```
Do you want remove 'download'filter and re-install? (y/n)[y] : y  
Do you want remove 'postio'filter and re-install? (y/n)[y] : y  
Do you want remove 'postior'filter and re-install? (y/n)[y] : y  
Do you want remove 'postplot'filter and re-install? (y/n)[y] : y  
Do you want remove 'postreverse'filter and re-install? (y/n)[y] : y  
Do you want remove 'posttek'filter and re-install? (y/n)[y] : y  
Do you want remove 'dpost'filter and re-install? (y/n)[y] : y  
Do you want remove 'postdaily'filter and re-install? (y/n)[y] : y  
Do you want remove 'postdmd'filter and re-install? (y/n)[y] : y  
Do you want remove 'postprint'filter and re-install? (y/n)[y] : y  
Do you want remove 'postmd'filter and re-install? (y/n)[y] : y
```

See For information on the respective filters, refer to the SunOS related manuals.

Important If PrintManager, started up using the Administration Tool (admintool) provided by Solaris, is used, the printer setup may be changed. When "lpstat -p printer name -l" is entered and "Content types: postscript" is returned, the printer must be deleted and re-installed using the lpadmin command.

(12) Set up the printer port monitor. If "y" is entered, the TCP port and the print service will be added.

Do you want set Port-Monitor?(y/n)[y] : **y**

Important For Solaris 2.6 or later, this question will not appear.

With this, the setup of a local workstation for using the printer from a remote workstation is complete.

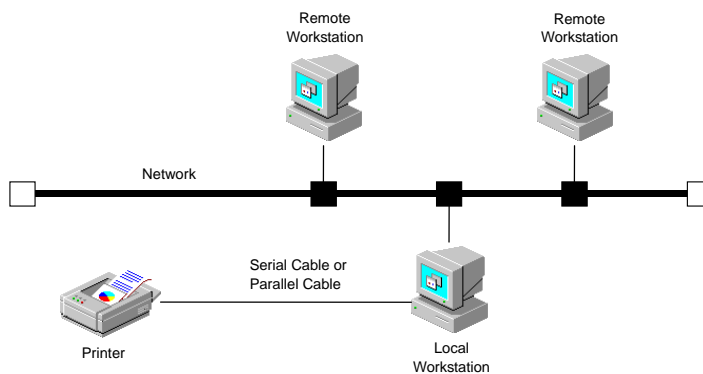
2.4 Operation at the Remote Workstation (Linux)

This section provides information on the operation at the remote workstation (Linux).

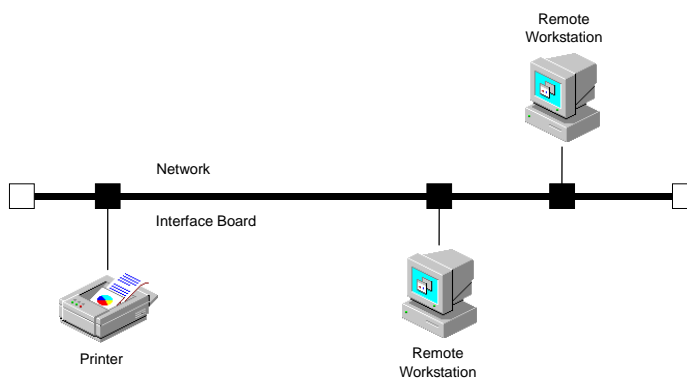
To use the printer from a remote workstation, set up the local workstation and the remote workstation. Before setting up the remote workstation, make sure that the local workstation has already been set up.

See For information on setting up the local workstation, refer to "2.2 Operation at the Local Workstation (Linux)" for Linux; refer to "2.3 Operation at the Local Workstation (Solaris)" for Solaris; and refer to "2.6 Installation Procedure" for HP-UX.

The following example shows an environment where printing is sent from the remote workstation and the printer is connected to the local workstation via a serial or parallel cable.



The following is an example where an interface board is installed on the printer and the printer is then connected directly to the network.



See For information on setting up the printer directly connected to the network, refer to "Appendix A Printing to Network Printers".

2.4.1 Setting Up a Printer

Important In the case of Linux (LPRng), refer to the setup noted in a separate document.

- (1) Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive of the remote workstation.
- (2) Log on as a power user. Retrieve printcap.add and store it in the current directory.

[Linux]

```
# mount /dev/cdrom /mnt/cdrom
# cd /tmp
# cp /mnt/cdrom/UXFILTER.tar .
# tar xvf ./UXDRIVER.tar uxdriver.tar
# tar xvf ./uxdriver.tar printcap.add.Z
# uncompress ./printcap.add.Z
```

Important Request the system administrator to perform the installation if you do not have the rights of a power user.

Note To use the print utility from the remote workstation, refer to "2.2 Operation at the Local Workstation (Linux)" and install the print utility.

- (3) After adding printcap.add in /etc/printcap, remove # (comment-out) from the printer entries under "Typical remote printer entry" and set up the remote printer. Change the underlined "Symphony" and "symphony" to the name of the workstation that is connected to the printer. In this example, all entries will be made valid.

```
Symphony_LBP|Remote Laser Press PS LBP:\
:lp=:rp=LBP:rm=symphony:sd=/var/spool/rlbp:\
:lf=/usr/adm/rlpd-errs:mx#0:
Symphony_A4|Remote Laser Press PS-A4:\
:lp=:rp=A4:rm=symphony:sd=/var/spool/ra4lpd:\
:lf=/usr/adm/rlpd-errs:mx#0:
Symphony_A3|Remote Laser Press PS-A3:\
:lp=:rp=A3:rm=symphony:sd=/var/spool/ra3lpd:\
:lf=/usr/adm/rlpd-errs:mx#0:
```

Note If necessary, add "lp|Symphony-A4|Remote Laser Press-A4" to the entry for the default printer lp.

Important Create the spool directory on a file system that has ample space. If the size of spool directory is too small, large files may not be printed.

Create the error log file "/usr/adm/lpd-errs" if it could not be found. Refer to Step 5 for the procedure.

- (4) Create the spool directory specified in the respective printer entries, and change the owner and permission. In the following example, the shell is "/bin/sh".

```
# cd /usr/spool
# for i in rlbp ra4lpd ra3lpd
> do
> mkdir $i; chown daemon.daemon $i; chmod 755 $i
> done
#
```

Note In the case of /bin/csh, the settings after foreach will be as follows:

```
[Linux]
# foreach i(rlbp ra4lpd ra3lpd)
foreach? mkdir $i; chown daemon.daemon $i; chmod 755 $i
foreach? end
```

- (5) Create the error log files as specified by the respective printer entries.

```
# cd /usr/adm; touch rlpd-errs
# chmod 644 rlpd-errs
```

Important Create the /usr/adm directory if it could not be found.

With this, the setup of the remote workstation is complete.

2.4.2 Customizing printcap

Important In the case of Linux (LPRng), refer to the setup noted in a separate document.

"2.4.1 Setting Up a Printer" explained the setup method that uses the default entries added to /etc/printcap during installation. Change the underlined sections below if the user wishes to assign the printer name or the spool directory. However, do not edit sections that are not underlined.

```
Symphony A3|Remote Laser Press PS-A3:\
:lp=:rp=A3:rm=symphony:sd=/var/spool/ra3lpd:\  
:lf=/usr/adm/rlpd-errs:mx#0:
```

Note The printer name will be described in the initial field of /etc/printcap. To specify multiple printer names, separate them with "|".

The printer name in /etc/printcap of the remote workstation is specified by "rp=printer registered in /etc/printcap of workstation connected to printer".

The spool directory is specified by "sd=absolute path of created directory". The directory specified here must be created before using the printer. The owner name and group name must be changed to daemon and the permission changed to 755.

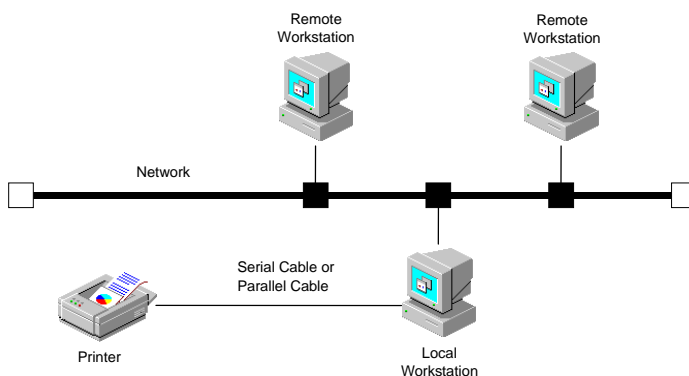
2.5 Operation at the Remote Workstation (Solaris)

This section provides information on the operation procedures at the remote workstation (Solaris). To use the printer from a remote workstation, set up the local workstation and the remote workstation. Before setting up the remote workstation, make sure that the local workstation has already been set up. In addition, lpd must be started up at the printer.

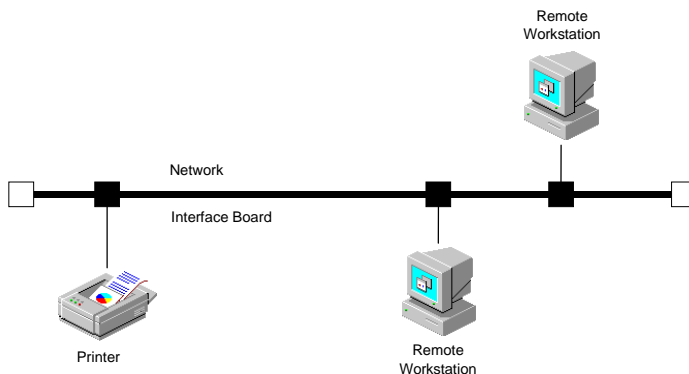
See For information on setting up the local workstation, refer to "2.2 Operation at the Local Workstation (Linux)" for Linux; refer to "2.3 Operation at the Local Workstation (Solaris)" for Solaris; and refer to "2.6 Installation Procedure" for HP-UX.

Important When using Solaris, filtering cannot be done at the client during output to the print server.

The following example shows an environment where printing is sent from the remote workstation and the printer is connected to the workstation via a serial or parallel cable.



The following is an example where an interface board is installed on the printer and the printer is then connected directly to the network.



2.5.1 Installation/Setting up a Printer

- (1) Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive of the remote workstation.
- (2) Set up the environment variable LANG.

In the case of `/bin/csh`

```
setenv LANG C
```

In the case of `/bin/sh`

```
LANG=C; export LANG
```

- (3) Log on as a power user and retrieve the installation script from the CD-ROM.

Important Request the system administrator to perform the installation if you do not have the rights of a power user.

```
# cd /tmp
# cp /cdrom/cdrom0/UXDRIVER.tar .
# tar xvf ./UXDRIVER.tar
```

The following files will be retrieved.

- ▶ README
- ▶ install.sh
- ▶ uxdriver.tar
- ▶ uxdriver2.tar
- ▶ uxdriver3.tar
- ▶ uxdriver4.tar

- (4) Enter `./install.sh` and run the installer.

```
# ./install.sh
```

- (5) Select the printer model that corresponds to the printer to be used, as noted in "2.1.3 Printer Model Selected during Installation". In this example, "2" will be selected.

```
Printer Model?
1. Document Centre 250/350/400
2. Document Centre 451/551
3. Document Centre 506/606/706
4. Document Centre 235/285/405
5. DocuPrint 205/255/305
6. DocuPrint 240A/340A
7. Document Centre 1085/1055/186/156
8. Document Centre 285/235
9. Document Centre 1100/900
```

```
10. Document Centre 336
11. ApeosPort 550 I/450 I/350 I
12. DocuCentre 550 I/450 I
13. ApeosPort 750 I/650 I
14. DocuCentre 750 I/650 I
15. DocuCentre-II 3005/2055/2005
16. Binary update only
17. Exit
Enter Process No (1/2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9/10/11/12/13/14/15/16/17)? : 2
```

- (6) The following menu will be displayed. Select "2" and set up the remote printer.

```
Solaris Installation for DC451
  1. Set Local Printer
  2. Set Remote Printer
Enter Process No (1/2)? : 2
```

- (7) Enter the host name of the print server or the host name of the printer. In this example, "elephant" will be registered.

```
Enter server-hostname?: elephant
server-hostname is 'elephant' (y/n)[y] : y
```

Important The host name of the server must be pre-registered with DNS, NIS, NIS+ or hosts.

To print directly to a printer connected via a network, register the host name of the printer.

- (8) Enter the printer name defined on the workstation that is connected to the printer. In this example, "ps" will be entered.

```
Enter server-printer-name?: ps
server-printer-name is 'ps' (y/n)[y] : y
```

Important To print from the remote workstation, register "ps" for the printer name connected to the print server and the printer connected to the network.

- (9) Enter the printer name registered in Solaris and specified using the lp command. In this example, "elephant" will be entered.

```
Enter client-printer-name?: elephant
client-printer-name is 'elephant' (y/n)[y] : y
```

Important Enter the printer name to be registered in the workstation that is being installed.

- (10) If the server entered in Step 7 is a printer connected to the network, enter "y". If the server and the printer are both connected locally, enter "n". In this example, "n" will be entered.

```
'Server-hostname' is network printer?: (y/n)[y] : n
```

- (11) If "n" is entered in Step 10, enter the system type of the workstation connected to the printer. Enter "1" for Solaris (System V), or "2" for SunOS 4.x (BSD series) and a network printer that

supports lpd. In this example, "2" will be entered.

```
Enter 'Server-hostname' system?:(1:s5 2:bsd) : 2
```

Important For Solaris 2.6 or later, this setting is not required.

If the OS of the server is Solaris 2.6 or later, enter "2".

(System V(s5) is not supported by machines running Solaris 2.6 or later.)

- (12) The user will be asked whether to use the filter on the workstation connected to the printer. If the printer is connected to the local workstation via a serial or parallel cable and the filter on the workstation connected to the printer is to be used, enter "y". However, if the printer is installed with and connected directly to the network via an interface board and the filter on the remote workstation is to be used, enter "n". In this example, enter "y".

```
Use filter in Print Server (y/n)[y] : y
```

- (13) Specify the directory to install the utility. To install in /usr/local/fxbin, press the <Return> key. To change, specify the directory. In this example, the directory will be changed to "/home/fxbin". The /usr/local directory must be created when selecting the default directory. (In the case of Mono2 and MonoSP, the default directory is /usr/local/fxbin205 and /usr/local/fxbinSP respectively. In the case of DP240A, the default directory is /usr/local/fxbin240A.)

```
Enter Binary directory name [/usr/local/fxbin] : /home/fxbin
```

- (14) Confirm the installation directory.

```
directory is '/home/fxbin'(y/n)[y] : y
```

Important Check that "tmp/y" was not wrongly specified.

- (15) If "n" is entered in Step 10, register the filter on the remote workstation. In the case of filters already registered with the system, the user will be asked whether to delete and register them again. To register them again, enter "y". Otherwise, enter "n". In this example, all filters will be re-registered.

```
Do you want remove 'download' filter and re-install?(y/n)[y] : y
Do you want remove 'postio' filter and re-install?(y/n)[y] : y
Do you want remove 'postior' filter and re-install?(y/n)[y] : y
Do you want remove 'postplot' filter and re-install?(y/n)[y] : y
Do you want remove 'postreverse' filter and re-install?(y/n)[y] : y
Do you want remove 'posttek' filter and re-install?(y/n)[y] : y
Do you want remove 'dpost' filter and re-install?(y/n)[y] : y
Do you want remove 'postdaily' filter and re-install?(y/n)[y] : y
Do you want remove 'postdmd' filter and re-install?(y/n)[y] : y
Do you want remove 'postprint' filter and re-install?(y/n)[y] : y
Do you want remove 'postmd' filter and re-install?(y/n)[y] : y
```

See For information on the respective filters, refer to the SunOS related manuals.

With this, the setup of the remote workstation (Solaris) is complete.

Important If the Administration Tool (admintool) provided by Solaris is used, the printer setup may be changed. When "lpstat -p printer_name -l" is entered and "Content types: postscript" is returned, the printer must be deleted and re-installed.

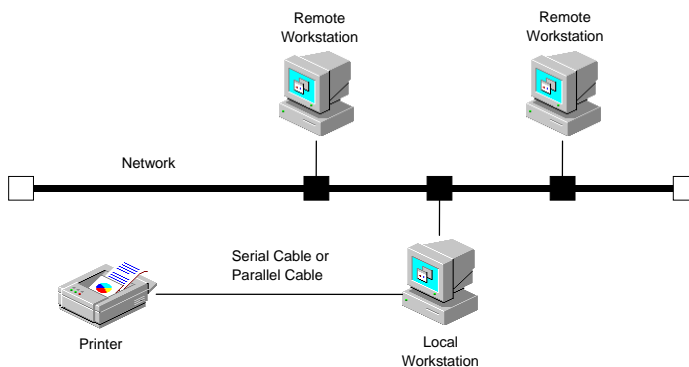
Do not use admintool to edit the printer registered via the UNIX Driver.

Also, use the lpadmin command to register the default printer. (# lpadmin -d printer_name)

To suppress banner sheet output, change "nobanner=no" to "nobanner=yes" in the /etc/lp/interfaces/printer_name file.

2.6 Installation Procedure (HP-UX)

This section provides information on the installation procedure for HP-UX. The following example shows an environment where a local workstation, which is connected to a printer via a serial or parallel cable, is used as a print server. The setup is the same as that for direct network cable connection.



Important This section presumes that the communication parameters of the serial port on the printer are set to the default values. For non-default cases, refer to the HP-UX related manuals where necessary.

Important Before starting up the installer, the output destination printer must be registered using SAM. For more information about SAM, refer to the HP-UX manual.

2.6.1 Installation Procedure

- (1) Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive of the workstation.
- (2) Set up the environment variable LANG.

In the case of `/bin/csh`

```
setenv LANG C
```

In the case of `/bin/sh`

```
LANG=C;export LANG
```

- (3) Log on as a power user and retrieve the installation script from the CD-ROM.

Important Request the system administrator to perform the installation if you do not have the rights of a power user.

```
# mount -F cdfs -o cdcase /dev/dsk/c1t2d0 /cdrom
# cd /tmp
# cp /cdrom/UXDRIVER.tar .
# tar xvf UXDRIVER.tar
```

Important "/dev/dsk/c1t2d0" is an example. Specify the CD-ROM device files for the respective workstations.

The following files will be retrieved.

- ▶ README
- ▶ install.sh
- ▶ uxdriver.tar
- ▶ uxdriver2.tar
- ▶ uxdriver3.tar

- (4) Enter `./install.sh` and run the installer.

```
# ./install.sh
```

- (5) Select the printer model that corresponds to the printer to be used, as noted in "2.1.3 Printer Model Selected during Installation". In this example, "7" will be selected.

```
Printer Model?
1. Document Centre 250/350/400
2. Document Centre 451/551
3. Document Centre 506/606/706
4. Document Centre 235/285/405
5. DocuPrint 205/255/305
6. DocuPrint 240A/340A
7. Document Centre 1085/1055/186/156
8. Document Centre 285/235
```

```

9. Document Centre 1100/900
10. Document Centre 336
11. ApeosPort 550 I/450 I/350 I
12. DocuCentre 550 I/450 I
13. ApeosPort 750 I/650 I
14. DocuCentre 750 I/650 I
15. DocuCentre-II 3005/2055/2005
16. Binary update only
17. Exit
Enter Process No (1/2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9/10/11/12/13/14/15/16/17)? :3

```

- (6) Specify the directory to install the utility. To install in /usr/local/fxbin, press the <Return> key. To change, specify the directory. In this example, the directory will be changed to "/home/fxbin". If this utility has already been installed, the user will be asked whether to overwrite the existing version. The /usr/local directory must be created when selecting the default directory.

(In the case of DocuPrint 205/255/305, the default directory is /usr/local/fxbin205. In the case of DocuPrint 240A/340A, the default directory is /usr/local/fxbin240A.)

```

Enter install directory name [/usr/local/fxbin] : /home/fxbin
directory is '/usr/local/fxbin' (y/n)[n] : y

```

Note If [] appears in a message, the default value will appear inside the []. In this case, the default value will be selected only when only the <Return> key is pressed.

- (7) Enter the name of the output printer. Let's register with "DC506".
Register the printer name using SAM before the installation.

```

Enter output-printer-name? : [DC506]
output-printer-name is ' DC506' (y/n)[y] : y

```

Note The registered printer name can be verified by executing "lpstat -v".

- (8) Enter the logical printer name. In this example, "UXDRIVER" will be registered. Now, enter a printer name that has not been registered with the system. After the installation, specify this printer with the lp command and this filter can be started up automatically by the lp command. For more information, refer to Chapter 3 and later sections.

```

Enter logical-printer-name? : UXDRIVER
Printer-name is 'UXDRIVER' (y/n)[y] : y

```

- (9) The utility will be installed in the directory specified in Step 6. The logical printer registered in Step 8 will be registered so that it can access the utility. As this process is automatically executed, no input is required. With this, installation is complete.

```

done.

```

See For more information on the respective utilities, refer to "Chapter 3 Print Operations and Utilities".

2.7 List of Error Messages

The error messages displayed during the installation and the methods on how to resolve them are as follows.

[Linux]

Error Messages	Cause	Action
install.sh:should be used by'root'	install.sh was not executed by a power user.	Log on as a power user and execute install.sh again.
install.sh:Installation give up.	Insufficient space for storing the filter libraries.	Install in a partition that has more than 20MB of free disk space.

[Solaris]

Error Messages	Cause	Action
install.sh:should be used by'root'.	install.sh was not executed by a power user.	Log on as a power user and execute install.sh again.
install.sh:should install sunwlp/ sunwlpu package.	lpshed is not functioning.	Install the sunwlp/ or sunwlpu package.
printer-name can contain alphanumeric characters and underscores.	Characters other than alphanumeric characters and underscores have been entered as the "printer-name."	Enter the "printer-name" correctly.
client-printer-name can contain alphanumeric characters and underscores.	Characters other than alphanumeric characters and underscores have been entered as the "client-printer-name."	Enter the "client-printer-name" correctly.
server-printer-name can contain alphanumeric characters and underscores.	Characters other than alphanumeric characters and underscores have been entered as the "server-printer-name."	Enter the "server-printer-name" correctly.
printer-name exceeds 14 character	The "printer-name" entered exceeded 14 characters.	Enter a "printer-name" not more than 14 characters.
client-printer-name exceeds 14 character.	The "client-printer-name" entered exceeded 14 characters.	Enter a "client-printer-name" not more than 14 characters.
server-printer-name exceeds 14 character.	The "server-printer-name" entered exceeded 14 characters.	Enter a "server-printer-name" not more than 14 characters.

[HP-UX]

Error Messages	Cause	Action
install.sh:should be used by 'root'	install.sh was not executed by a power user.	Log on as a power user and execute install.sh again.
install.sh:should install LP-SPOOL filesets.	The lpsched or lpshut command could not be found.	Install the LP-SPOOL file set.
output-printer-name can contain alphanumeric characters and underscores	Characters other than alphanumeric characters and underscores have been entered as the "output-printer-name."	Enter the correct "output-printer-name".
logical-printer-name can contain alphanumeric characters and underscores.	Characters other than alphanumeric characters and underscores have been entered as the "logical-printer-name."	Enter the correct "logical-printer-name".
output-printer-name exceeds 14 character.	The "output-printer-name" entered exceeded 14 characters.	Enter a "output-printer-name" not more than 14 characters.
logical-printer-name exceeds 14 character.	The "logical-printer-name entered" exceeded 14 characters.	Enter a "logical-printer-name" not more than 14 characters.
The printer "Printer name" is not installed.	A printer name that was not registered was entered in "logical-printer-name".	Enter the correct "logical-printer-name".
The printer "Printer name" has already been installed.	A printer name that had already been registered was entered in "output-printer-name".	Enter the correct "output-printer-name".

Chapter 3 Printing and Utility

3.1 Print Operations (Linux)

This section contains information on printing operations that use the filter. For more information on the respective utilities, refer to the sections from "3.5 euc2ps2" to "3.16 foption".

To print, specify the printer registered with `/etc/printcap` as the output destination.

3.1.1 Using the UNIX Driver Utility Independently

Printing to the default printer:

If the printer is registered as the default printer, the printer name can be omitted as shown in the example below.

```
% lpr filename
```

Printing to other printers:

To print to a printer named "A4", input as follows:

```
% lpr -PA4 filename
```

Changing the default printer temporarily for printing:

To change the default printer, set the printer name in the environment variable `PRINTER`.

To set the printer named "A4" as the default printer for printing, input as follows:

```
% setenv PRINTER A4  
% lpr filename
```

Selecting a paper tray for printing:

When selecting a paper tray for printing, the `.fxpsdefault` file, the `.fxpsdefault205` file and the `.fxpsdefault240A` file must be used to define in advance the filter that uses the desired paper tray.

To select Tray 2 (second tray) for printing, execute the `.fxpsdefault` file and define the printer so that it feeds paper from Tray 2. Specify "tray 2", which is the printer name of the defined printer name, as follows.

```
% lpr -Ptray2 filename
```

3.1.2 Using Multiple UNIX Driver Utilities

Create the setup files, `.fxpsdefault` file and `.fxpsdefault205` file, by using the `fxoption` utility when printing using the respective utilities with different settings.

See For more information on the respective utilities, refer to the sections from "3.5 euc2ps2" to "3.16 fxoption".

.fxpsdefault, .fxpsdefault205(Mono2), .fxpsdefault240A(DP240A)

This is the file for setting unique options when using the respective utilities via `/etc/printcap`. Hereafter, the file will be referred to as the "default command option setup file".

Setup Method

To define a printer named "A4D" which prints on A4 paper using the Flip on Long Edge feature, carry out the following operation.

Procedure

- (1) Create the default command option setup file under the user home directory or the `/usr/lib/fxps/UserDefault` directory.

```
% user_home_directory/.fxpsdefault
or
% /usr/lib/fxps/UserDefault/.fxpsdefault
```

(In the case of Mono2, it is `/usr/lib/fxps205/UserDefault/.fxpsdefault205` file. In the case of DP240A, it is `/usr/lib/fxps240A/UserDefault/.fxpsdefault240A` file.)

When a user sends a print job using the `lpr` command, the options set in the `.fxpsdefault` file in the user home directory will be added and printed.

For a user without the `.fxpsdefault` default option setup file in the home directory, the options set in the `/usr/lib/fxps/UserDefault/.fxpsdefault` file will be automatically added.

Note To use the same settings for all users, set up `/usr/lib/fxps/UserDefault/.fxpsdefault`.

- (2) Register the printer "A4D" in `/etc/printcap`.

[Linux]

```
A4D|506-A4D|A4 Size DuplexBook:\
:lp=/dev/ttyS1:sd=/var/spool/a4ldlpd:\
:lf=/usr/adm/lpd-errors:af=/usr/adm/fxpsacct:\
:of=/usr/lib/fxps/a4dof:\
:vf=/usr/lib/fxps/a4dvf:\
:if=/usr/lib/fxps/a4dif:\
:sb:sf:mx#0:
```

- (3) Log on as a power user and create the files for the `a4dif`, `a4dvf` and `a4dof` filters with the symbolic links in order to print on A4 paper using the Flip on Long Edge feature.

```
# ln -s /usr/lib/fxps/fxpif /usr/lib/fxps/a4dif
# ln -s /usr/lib/fxps/fxpvf /usr/lib/fxps/a4dvf
# ln -s /usr/lib/fxps/fxpof /usr/lib/fxps/a4dof
```

- (4) Describe the default command option setup file for specifying the unique options of the a4dif, a4dvf and a4dof filters as follows.

```
a4dif -D IA4  
a4dvf -IA4  
a4dof -IA4
```

- (5) Once "A4D" is specified as the printer name, printing can be done on A4 paper and using the Flip on Long Edge feature.

```
% lpr -PA4D filename
```

Important As fpxvf and fpxg4f are hard linked to xwd2ps2 in the case of Linux, fpxg4f cannot be specified using the above method. To run G4 Compression, specify the -G4 option in fpxvf.

The file names of a4dif, a4dvf and a4dof created by the symbolic links are common file names for all users.

3.2 Print Operations (Solaris)

This section contains information on printing operations that use the filter. For more information on the respective utilities, refer to sections "3.5 euc2ps2" and later. To print from Solaris, specify the printer registered during the installation of filters as the output destination.

Important To use the `lp` command, make sure the operating environment of the spooler has been set up correctly (enabled, available) using the `lpstat` command (`lpstat -p all`). For more information on the options of the `lp` command and the `lpstat` command and how to make use of them, refer to the OS related manuals.

3.2.1 Printing from Solaris

Printing to the default printer:

If the printer is registered as the default printer, the printer name can be omitted as shown in the example below.

```
% lp filename
```

Printing to other printers:

To print to a printer named "506PS", input as follows:

```
% lp -d 506PS filename
```

Note The name of the printer can be confirmed by executing "`lpstat -v`".

Changing the default printer temporarily for printing:

To change the default printer, set the printer name in the environment variable `LPDEST`.

To print to a printer named "506PS", input as follows:

```
% setenv LPDEST 506PS
% lp filename
```

Note This method can be used to set up the default printer for each user.

The above example describes the setup method where "csh" is used.

Selecting a paper tray for printing:

To select a paper tray for printing, specify the paper tray after the `-y` option of the `lp` command.

See The paper trays available depend on the models and installed options.

Refer to the relevant printer sections in sections "3.21 FXDC250.f" and later.

To print from Tray 2 (second tray) of the printer named "506PS", specify as follows.

```
% lp -d 506PS -y tray2 filename
```

Important In the print environment of Solaris, the banner sheet will be printed from the default tray based on the system structure. For example, even if A3 paper is specified in the `-y` option of the `lp` command, the banner sheet will still be output from the default tray (Factory settings: Tray 1). To suppress the banner sheet output, change "`nobanner=no`" to "`nobanner=yes`" in the `/etc/lp/interfaces/printer_name file`.

3.3 Print Operations from Logical Printer (HP-UX)

This section contains information on printing operations that use the logical printer registered during installation. For more information on the options that can be used, refer to "3.3.2 List of Common Options" and later. For more information on the respective utilities, refer to "3.5 euc2ps2" and later.

3.3.1 Printing from the Logical Printer (HP-UX)

Printing to the default printer:

If the printer is registered as the default printer, the printer name can be omitted as shown in the example below.

```
% lp filename
```

Note The default printer can be changed by executing "lpadmin -d printer_name".

Printing to other printers:

To print to a printer named "UXDRIVER", input as follows:

```
% lp -dUXDRIVER filename
```

Changing the default printer temporarily for printing:

To change the default printer, set the printer name in the environment variable PRINTER.

To set a printer named "UXDRIVER" as the default printer for printing, input as follows:

```
% setenv PRINTER UXDRIVER
% lp filename
```

Printing with additional options:

Example: To print from Tray 2 (second tray), use the option to define such that paper is fed from Tray 2. Options are defined using "-o" as shown below. For more information on the options of the respective filters, refer to "3.3.2 List of Common Options" and "3.3.3 Inherent Printer Options".

```
% lp -oI2 filename
```

Printing XWD format files:

Start up the filter that converts XWD format files to PostScript language programs. The specification for activating the filter file for XWD format must be done via the option.

To print to a logical printer named "UXDRIVER", input as follows:

```
% lp -dUXDRIVER -o XWD filename
```

Compressing the XWD format file with G4 Compression for printing:

Start up the filter that converts XWD format files to PostScript language programs in the G4 Compression format. In this case, the size of data sent to the spooler is less than when the data is not compressed. However, compression can only be applied to XWD images with 1-bit pixel depth. The specification for activating the filter file for XWD format for G4 Compression must be done via the option.

To print to a logical printer named "UXDRIVER", input as follows:

```
% lp -dUXDRIVER -o XG4 filename
```

Printing TIFF format files:

Start up the filter for converting TIFF format files to PostScript language programs. The specification for activating the filter file for TIFF format must be done via the option.

To print to a logical printer named "UXDRIVER", input as follows:

```
% lp -dUXDRIVER -o TIF filename
```

Compressing the TIFF format file with G4 Compression for printing:

Start up the filter that converts TIFF format files to PostScript language programs in the G4 Compression format. In this case, the size of data sent to the spooler is less than when the data is not compressed. However, compression can only be applied to TIFF images with 1-bit pixel depth. The specification for activating the filter file for TIFF format for G4 Compression must be done via the option.

To print to a logical printer named "UXDRIVER", input as follows:

```
% lp -dUXDRIVER -o TG4 filename
```

Printing PostScript files:

No special procedure is required for printing PostScript files. Specify the lp command as in the case with printing English text files.

To print PostScript files to "UXDRIVER", input as follows:

```
% lp -dUXDRIVER filename
```

However, for PostScript files with options specified, such as paper selection, if the same option is specified, it will be ignored.

In addition, to print PostScript files as text files, specify the "TX" option. With this specification, PostScript files will be processed as text files.

To print PostScript files as text files to "UXDRIVER", specify as follows.

```
% lp -dUXDRIVER -o TX filename
```

3.3.2 List of Common Options (HP-UX)

When the `lp` command is executed, if the logical printer set up during the installation is specified, the following options can be used in addition to the functions of the `lp` command. The following options are available on all printers that support this filter. For more information on the inherent options of the printer, refer to "3.3.3 Inherent Printer Options" and later. For information on the method of specifying the options using the `lp` command, refer to the HP-UX related manuals.

◇ Execution Format

```
lp [-option ] filename
```

◇ Option

[**XWD**]

Starts up the filter that converts XWD image files into PostScript language files. This must be specified when printing an XWD image file.

[**XG4**]

Starts up the filter that converts XWD image files into G4-compressed PostScript language files. This must be specified when compressing an XWD image file in G4 Compression format for printing.

[**TIF**]

Starts up the filter that converts TIFF image files into PostScript language files. This must be specified when printing a TIFF image file.

[**TG4**]

Starts up the filter that converts TIFF image files into G4-compressed PostScript language files. This must be specified when compressing a TIFF image file in G4 Compression format for printing.

[**TX**]

Specify this option when printing PostScript language files as text files.

Note If none of the above options are specified, the filter will start up assuming the file to be an EUC text file or a PostScript language file.

[**Nc=copies**]

Specifies the number of output copies (the value of *copies* must be a positive integer).

[**Hd=position:format:page**]

Outputs the output user information as header/footer in specified locations.

position specifies the output position. However, in the case of PostScript file conversion, the output is always at the bottom left position.

- | | |
|----|---|
| ul | Outputs to the top left of the paper. |
| ur | Outputs to the top right of the paper. |
| dl | Outputs to the bottom left of the paper. |
| dr | Outputs to the bottom right of the paper. |

format specifies the output contents and sequence. This specification can be omitted.

If this option is omitted, "uh" will become the default.

u User Name

h Host Name

t Date/Time

The output will be as follows if "tuh" is specified as the output contents.

2002/11/11 Fri 01:23:45 GMT User:*username* Host:*hostname*

page refers to the page to be output. This specification can be omitted.

This specification will be ignored in the case of XWD or TIFF images.

f Output only the first page (default for PostScript file conversion)

a Output all pages (default for text file conversion)

Specify as follows.

To output the date/time and host name accordingly at the bottom left and only on the first page:

Hd=dl:th:f

Important During PostScript file conversion, there may be no output even if output all pages was specified. If this happens, specify to output only the first page.

The specification of the time zone (JST, GMT, etc.) for date/time can be done via the environment variable TZ.

[**Hf***headerfont*]

Specifies the font for printing the header/footer. Single-byte alphanumeric European fonts and single-byte alphanumeric characters can be used. The default is Helvetica.

Note If an incorrect font is specified, the default European font of the printer will be used.

If the header/footer output option is not specified, the header/footer font specification will be ignored.

※ The following options can be specified when printing an EUC text file.

[**2**]

Prints in two stages.

[**r**]

Rotates the output by 90 degrees and uses the paper in the landscape orientation.

[**F**]

Ignores the Form Feed Code (FF).

[**l***lines*]

Specifies the number of lines per page.

[**w***columns*]

Specifies the number of columns per line.

[**o***outcolumns*]

Converts print data into single-byte text and starts printing from outcolumns.

[**L***outlines*]

Prints text from the outlines column.

[**e***n*]

Expands horizontal tabs to n columns (space). The default is 8.

[*s*size]

Specifies the font size in size points. The default is 10 points.

[*mg*=upmargin:bottommargin:rightmargin:leftmargin]

Specifies the page margins in inches. The upmargin, bottommargin, rightmargin, and leftmargin are positive real numbers (up to two decimal places). The default is 0.

-mg=0:0:0:3 Sets the left margin to 3 inches.

-mg=3:3:0:5 Sets the top margin to 3 inches; bottom margin, 3 inches;
and left margin, 5 inches.

If the margin is 0, it can be omitted.

-mg=:::3 Sets the left margin to 3 inches.

[*f*font]

Specifies the font for printing single-byte alphanumeric characters.

To specify a font, input the font name as-is after the "-o f" option.

%lp -o fCourier-Oblique *filename*

See For more information on the fonts that can be used, refer to the appendix or the printer manual.

[*ps*]

Processes the input file as a PostScript file. If the file does not begin with "%!", "%!" will be output to the first line. In addition, regardless of whether the file contains "%!", the other options of the EUC text file will be ignored.

※ The following options can be specified when printing XWD or TIFF image.

[*r*]

Rotates the image by 90 degrees and uses the paper in the landscape orientation.

[*n*]

showpage will not be added. This option is used for merging files converted into PostScript language programs with files created by other applications.

[*l*=left, bottom]

Specifies the output position. Printing will be done from the *left* (inch) and *bottom* (inch) of the page. The default is 0.25 inch for both *left* and *bottom*.

[*s*=width,height]

Specifies the output size. Printing will be done based on the *width* (inch) and *height* (inch).

[*s*=width]

Specifies the *width* (inch) of the output size in inches. The height will be calculated automatically based on the width.

See For more information on the precautions and limitations of the options, refer to "Chapter 4 Precautions and Limitations".

3.3.3 Inherent Printer Options (HP-UX)

When the `lp` command is executed, if the logical printer set up during installation is specified, the following options can be used in addition to the functions of the `lp` command. The following options may not be available, depending on the functions of the printer. The inherent functions of the printer will be described for each printer model. To find out the model of the printer in use, refer to "2.1.3 Printer Model Selected during Installation".

◆DC250

Refer to the following section when using Document Centre 250/350/400.

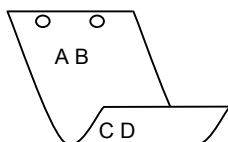
◇ Execution Format

```
lp [-ooption] filename
```

◇ Option

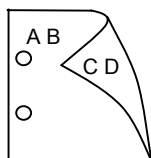
[d]

Prints using the Flip on Short Edge feature. When Flip on Short Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge. This option is valid only for models with the 2 Sided Print feature. If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, 2 Sided Print will not be executed.



[D]

Prints using the Flip on Long Edge feature. When Flip on Long Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge. This option is valid only for models with the 2 Sided Print feature. If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, 2 Sided Print will not be executed.



[Itray_input]

Specifies the paper tray.

A paper tray can be selected by directly specifying a tray or paper size.

If paper size is specified, the tray loaded with paper of the specified size will be searched and selected automatically.

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
A3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
A4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
B4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger-size paper.
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper.
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
Pakai	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K paper.
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper.
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper.
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-Pakai	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 Envelope.
MSI-PC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

For models that do not output on envelopes, printing will be output to the paper from the default tray if an envelope size is specified.

See For information on models that do not output on envelopes, refer to the printer manual.

Important If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, 2 Sided Print will not be executed.

[Otray_output]

Specifies the output tray.

The parameters for selecting the output tray are as follows.

fd	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
fu	Outputs to the Face Up Tray.
mn	Outputs to bin n of the Mailbox. The value of n is any number

from 1 to 10.

fs Auto-selects the Finisher.

fsn Outputs to bin n of the Finisher.

The value of n is any number from 1 to 3.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be output to the default tray.

If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, it cannot be output to the Mailbox or the Sorter. If the Mailbox and Sorter are specified, it will output to the Face Down Tray.

If the Finisher is specified, paper can be output to the specified tray but it will not be stapled.

[c1]

This feature allows collated printing. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

[JN]

Adds the XJCL header to the PostScript file to be output. The output user information can be recorded as printer print history via the XJCL header output. This can only be used when the JCL switch of the printer is on. In addition, it cannot be used on printers that do not support XJCL.

The login user name and workstation host name are recorded as print history in the printer.

[JU=username]

Adds the XJCL header to the PostScript file to be output. The output user information can be recorded as printer print history via the XJCL header output. This can only be used when the JCL switch of the printer is on. In addition, it cannot be used on printers that do not support XJCL.

The user name and workstation host name specified in username are recorded as print history in the printer. If username is not specified, "UnknownUser" will be recorded.

◇ Example

To print on paper fed from the 8K tray of a printer named "DC250" with the Flip on Short Edge and the 2 Sided Print features turned on, input as follows:

```
% lp -d DC250 -oIPakai -od filename
```


◆DC451

Refer to the following section when using Document Centre 451/551.

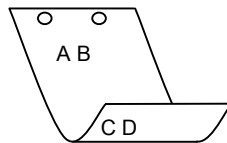
◇ Execution Format

`lp [-option] filename`

◇ Option

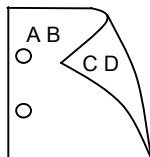
[a]

Prints using the Flip on Short Edge feature. When Flip on Short Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge. This option is valid only for models with the 2 Sided Print feature. If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, 2 Sided Print will not be executed.



[D]

Prints using the Flip on Long Edge feature. When Flip on Long Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge. This option is valid only for models with the 2 Sided Print feature. If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, 2 Sided Print will not be executed.



[Itray_input]

Specifies the paper tray.

A paper tray can be selected by directly specifying a tray or paper size.

If paper size is specified, the tray loaded with paper of the specified size will be searched and selected automatically.

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

- | | |
|----|---|
| 1 | Feeds paper from Tray 1. |
| 2 | Feeds paper from Tray 2. |
| 3 | Feeds paper from Tray 3. |
| 4 | Feeds paper from Tray 4. |
| m1 | This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 1. |

m2	This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 2.
m3	This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 3.
A3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
A4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
A6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
B4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
B6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger-size paper.
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper.
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
ST	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Statement-size paper.
Pakai	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K paper.
PC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcards.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

For models that do not output on envelopes, printing will be output to the paper from the default tray if an envelope size is specified.

See For information on models that do not output on envelopes, refer to the printer manual.

[Otray_output]

Specifies the output tray.

The parameters for selecting the output tray are as follows.

fd	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
mn	Outputs to bin n of the Mailbox. The value of n is any number from 1 to 10.
fs	Auto-selects the Finisher.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be output to the default tray.

If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, it cannot be output to the Mailbox or the Sorter. If the Mailbox and Sorter are specified, it will output to the Face Down Tray. If the Finisher is specified, paper can be output to the specified tray but it will not be stapled.

[C1]

This feature allows collated printing. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

[JN]

Adds the XJCL header to the PostScript file to be output. The output user information can be recorded as printer print history via the XJCL header output. This can only be used when the JCL switch of the printer is on. In addition, it cannot be used on printers that do not support XJCL.

The login user name and workstation host name are recorded as print history in

the printer.

[**JU**=*username*]

Adds the XJCL header to the PostScript file to be output. The output user information can be recorded as printer print history via the XJCL header output. This can only be used when the JCL switch of the printer is on. In addition, it cannot be used on printers that do not support XJCL.

The user name and workstation host name specified in *username* are recorded as print history in the printer. If *username* is not specified, "UnknownUser" will be recorded.

◇ Example

To print to a printer named "DC451" with paper fed from Multi-Tray 1:

```
% lp -d DC451 -oIm1 filename
```

◆DC506

Refer to the following section when using Document Centre 506/606/706.

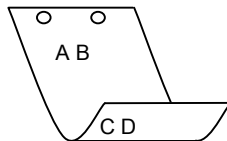
◇Execution Format

`lp [-option] filename`

◇Option

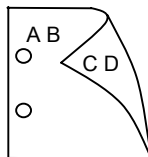
[a]

Prints using the Flip on Short Edge feature. When Flip on Short Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge. This option is valid only for models with the 2 Sided Print feature. If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, 2 Sided Print will not be executed.



[D]

Prints using the Flip on Long Edge feature. When Flip on Long Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge. This option is valid only for models with the 2 Sided Print feature. If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, 2 Sided Print will not be executed.



[Itray_input]

Specifies the paper tray.

A paper tray can be selected by directly specifying a tray or paper size.

If paper size is specified, the tray loaded with paper of the specified size will be searched and selected automatically.

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

- | | |
|----|---|
| 1 | Feeds paper from Tray 1. |
| 2 | Feeds paper from Tray 2. |
| 3 | Feeds paper from Tray 3. |
| 4 | Feeds paper from Tray 4. |
| m1 | This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 1. |

m2	This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 2.
m3	This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 3.
A3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
A4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
A6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
B4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
B6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger-size paper.
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper.
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
ST	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Statement-size paper.
Pakai	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K paper.
PC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcards.
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-B6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper.
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper.
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-ST	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement-size paper.
MSI-Pakai	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8K paper.
MSI-PC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

For models that do not output on envelopes, printing will be output to the paper from the default tray if an envelope size is specified.

See For information on models that do not output on envelopes, refer to the printer manual.

[Otray_output]

Specifies the output tray.

The parameters for selecting the output tray are as follows.

fd	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
fstm	Outputs to the Main Tray of the Finisher.
fst2	Outputs to the Lower Tray of the Finisher.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be output to the default tray.

If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, it cannot be output to the Mailbox or the Sorter. If the Mailbox and Sorter are specified, it will output to the Face Down Tray. If the Finisher is specified, paper can be output to the specified tray but it will not be stapled.

[C1]

This feature allows collated printing. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

[JN]

Adds the XJCL header to the PostScript file to be output. The output user information can be recorded as printer print history via the XJCL header output. This can only be used when the JCL switch of the printer is on. In addition, it cannot be used on printers that do not support XJCL.

The login user name and workstation host name are recorded as print history in the printer.

[JU=username]

Adds the XJCL header to the PostScript file to be output. The output user information can be recorded as printer print history via the XJCL header output. This can only be used when the JCL switch of the printer is on. In addition, it cannot be used on printers that do not support XJCL.

The user name and workstation host name specified in username are recorded as print history in the printer. If username is not specified, "UnknownUser" will be recorded.

◇ **Example**

To print to a printer named "DC506" with paper fed from Multi-Tray 1:

```
% lp -d DC506 -oIm1 filename
```

◆DC235

Refer to the following section when using Document Centre 235/285/405.

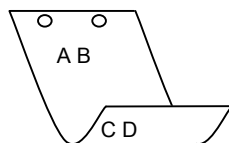
◇ Execution Format

`lp [-option] filename`

◇ Option

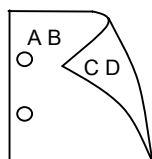
[d]

Prints using the Flip on Short Edge feature. When Flip on Short Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge. This option is valid only for models with the 2 Sided Print feature. If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, 2 Sided Print will not be executed.



[D]

Prints using the Flip on Long Edge feature. When Flip on Long Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge. This option is valid only for models with the 2 Sided Print feature. If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, 2 Sided Print will not be executed.



[Itray_input]

Specifies the paper tray.

A paper tray can be selected by directly specifying a tray or paper size.

If paper size is specified, the tray loaded with paper of the specified size will be searched and selected automatically.

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

- | | |
|----|---|
| 1 | Feeds paper from Tray 1. |
| 2 | Feeds paper from Tray 2. |
| 3 | Feeds paper from Tray 3. |
| 4 | Feeds paper from Tray 4. |
| A3 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper. |

A4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
B4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger-size paper.
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper.
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-B6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper.
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper.
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-ST	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement-size paper.
MSI-PC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.
MSI-EC3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Choukei 3 Envelope.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

For models that do not output on envelopes, printing will be output to the paper from the default tray if an envelope size is specified.

See For information on models that do not output on envelopes, refer to the printer manual.

[Otray_output]

Specifies the output tray.

The parameters for selecting the output tray are as follows.

fd	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
fu	Outputs to the Face Up Tray.
fst1	Outputs to the Lower Tray of the Finisher.
fst2	Outputs to the Upper Tray of the Finisher.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be output to the default tray.

If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, it cannot be output to the Mailbox or the

Sorter. If the Mailbox and Sorter are specified, it will output to the Face Down Tray. If the Finisher is specified, paper can be output to the specified tray but it will not be stapled.

[**C1**]

This feature allows collated printing. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

[**t**]

Prints using the Draft Mode. The resulting print will be lighter than normal prints. For models without the "Draft Mode" function, this option will be ignored.

[**JN**]

Adds the XJCL header to the PostScript file to be output. The output user information can be recorded as printer print history via the XJCL header output. This can only be used when the JCL switch of the printer is on. In addition, it cannot be used on printers that do not support XJCL.

The login user name and workstation host name are recorded as print history in the printer.

[**JU=username**]

Adds the XJCL header to the PostScript file to be output. The output user information can be recorded as printer print history via the XJCL header output. This can only be used when the JCL switch of the printer is on. In addition, it cannot be used on printers that do not support XJCL.

The user name and workstation host name specified in username are recorded as print history in the printer. If username is not specified, "UnknownUser" will be recorded.

◇ Example

To print to a printer named "DC235" with paper fed from Tray 1:

```
% lp -d DC235 -oI1 filename
```

◆DP205

Refer to the following section when using DocuPrint 205/255/305.

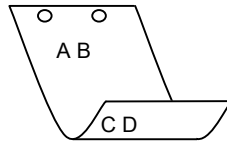
◇Execution Format

`lp [-option] filename`

◇Option

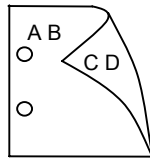
[d]

Prints using the Flip on Short Edge feature. When Flip on Short Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge.



[D]

Prints using the Flip on Long Edge feature. When Flip on Long Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge.



[Itray_input]

Specifies the paper tray.

A paper tray can be selected by directly specifying a tray or paper size.

If paper size is specified, the tray loaded with paper of the specified size will be searched and selected automatically.

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

- | | |
|----|---|
| 1 | Feeds paper from Tray 1. |
| 2 | Feeds paper from Tray 2. |
| 3 | Feeds paper from Tray 3. |
| 4 | Feeds paper from Tray 4. |
| A3 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper. |
| A4 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper. |
| A5 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper. |
| B4 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper. |
| B5 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper. |

LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper.
MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper.
MSI-ST	Feeds from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
MSI-EXE	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Executive-size paper (7.25x10.5").
MSI-PC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.
MSI-Monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc Envelope.
MSI-COM10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 Envelope.
MSI-DL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL Envelope.
MSI-C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI-EY4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Youkei 4 Envelope.
MSI-MxNmm	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

The following non-standard sizes are available.

Smallest: 76.2x98.4 mm, Largest: 304.8x508.0 mm

297x900 mm and 210x900 mm long paper will be taken as non-standard sizes.

[Otray_output]

Specifies the output tray.

The parameters for selecting the output tray are as follows.

fu Outputs to the Face Up Tray.

fd	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
of	Outputs to the Offset Catch Tray.

[c1]

This feature allows collated printing. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

[t]

Prints using the Draft Mode. The resulting print will be lighter than normal prints. For models without the "Draft Mode" function, this option will be ignored.

[E]

Select this checkbox to turn on the Image Enhancement feature. For models without the "Image Enhancement" function, this option will be ignored even if specified.

[Jo=type]

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB	job	Offset Per Job
SE	set	Offset Per Set

[M=type]

Selects a paper type for the Manual Feed. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain
RC	recycled	Recycled
H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)
H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency

[CO=type...]

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
DT	detail	Fine
RH	rough	Rough

[Pr=resolution]

Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.

Stand	Standard
Fine	High Quality

◇ Example

To print to a printer named "DP205" with paper fed from Tray 1:

```
% lp -d DP205 -oI1 filename
```

◆DP240A

Refer to the following section when using DocuPrint 240A/340A.

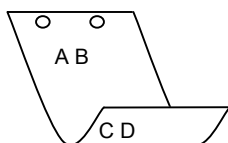
◇Execution Format

`lp [-option] filename`

◇Option

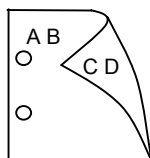
[d]

Prints using the Flip on Short Edge feature. When Flip on Short Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge.



[D]

Prints using the Flip on Long Edge feature. When Flip on Long Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge.



[Itray_input]

Specifies the paper tray.

A paper tray can be selected by directly specifying a tray or paper size.

If paper size is specified, the tray loaded with paper of the specified size will be searched and selected automatically.

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
A4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
A6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper.

	(13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
EX	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Executive-size paper.
MO	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc Envelope.
COM10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 Envelope.
DL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL Envelope.
C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.
LP 210x900	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with long paper.
MxNmm	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper. <i>M</i> (width) and <i>N</i> (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).
MxNin	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with MxNin non-standard-size paper. <i>M</i> (width) and <i>N</i> (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

The following non-standard sizes are available.

Smallest: 76.2x98.4 mm, Largest: 304.8x508.0 mm

297x900 mm and 210x900 mm long paper will be taken as non-standard sizes.

[Otray_output]

Specifies the output tray.

The parameters for selecting the output tray are as follows.

ce	Outputs to the Center Tray.
re	Outputs to the Rear Tray.
of	Outputs to the Offset Catch Tray.

[c1]

This feature allows collated printing. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

[t]

Prints using the Draft Mode. The resulting print will be lighter than normal prints. For models without the "Draft Mode" function, this option will be ignored.

[E]

Select this checkbox to turn on the Image Enhancement feature. For models without the "Image Enhancement" function, this option will be ignored even if specified.

◇ Example

To print to a printer named "DP240A" with paper fed from Tray 1:

```
% lp -d DP240A -oI1 filename
```

◆DC186

Refer to the following section when using Document Centre 1085/1055/186/156.

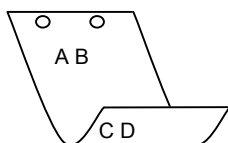
◇Execution Format

`lp [-option] filename`

◇Option

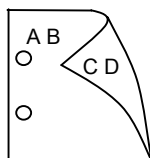
[d]

Prints using the Flip on Short Edge feature. When Flip on Short Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge.



[D]

Prints using the Flip on Long Edge feature. When Flip on Long Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge.



[Itray_input]

Specifies the paper tray.

A paper tray can be selected by directly specifying a tray or paper size.

If paper size is specified, the tray loaded with paper of the specified size will be searched and selected automatically.

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
A3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
A4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
B4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.

LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 11x17" Ledger paper.
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.5x13" Folio paper.
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.5x14" Legal-size paper.
ST	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 5.5x8.5" Statement paper.
EXE	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 7.25x10.5" Executive paper.
4x6in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 4x6" paper.
PC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcards.
EC3Y	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Choukei 3 envelope.
8kaiT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
16kaiT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
8kaiC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
16kaiC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
Monarc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc envelope.
COM10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 envelope.
DL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL envelope.
C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 envelope.
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper.
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper.
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-ST	Feeds from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
MSI-EXE	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Executive-size paper (7.25x10.5").

MSI-PC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.
MSI-EC3Y	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Choukei 3 envelope.
MSI-8kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
MSI -16kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
MSI -8kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
MSI -16kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
MSI-Monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc Envelope.
MSI-COM10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 Envelope.
MSI-DL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL Envelope.
MSI-C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI-MxNmm	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

The following non-standard sizes are available.

Smallest: 88.9x98.4 mm, Largest: 297.0x431.8 mm

[Otray_output]

Specifies the output tray.

The parameters for selecting the output tray are as follows.

fd Outputs to the Face Down Tray.

[C1]

This feature allows collated printing. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

[t]

Prints using the Draft Mode. The resulting print will be lighter than normal prints. For models without the "Draft Mode" function, this option will be ignored.

[E]

Select this checkbox to turn on the Image Enhancement feature. For models without the "Image Enhancement" function, this option will be ignored even if specified.

[Jo=type]

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB job Offset Per Job

SE	set	Offset Per Set
----	-----	----------------

[**M**=*type*]

Selects a paper type for the Manual Feed. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain
RC	recycled	Recycled
H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)
H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency
TN	thin	Thin
LB	label	Labels

[**CO**=*type*...]

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
DT	detail	Fine
RH	rough	Rough

[**Pr**=*resolution*]

Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.

Stand	Standard
Fine	High Quality

◇ Example

To print to a printer named "DC186" with paper fed from Tray 1:

```
% lp -d DC186 -oI1 filename
```

◆DC286

Refer to the following section when using Document Centre 286/236.

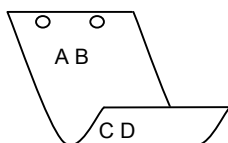
◇Execution Format

`lp [-option] filename`

◇Option

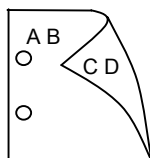
[d]

Prints using the Flip on Short Edge feature. When Flip on Short Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge.



[D]

Prints using the Flip on Long Edge feature. When Flip on Long Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge.



[Itray_input]

Specifies the paper tray.

A paper tray can be selected by directly specifying a tray or paper size.

If paper size is specified, the tray loaded with paper of the specified size will be searched and selected automatically.

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
A3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
A4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
A6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
B4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.

B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
B6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 11x17" Ledger paper.
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.5x13" Folio paper.
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.5x14" Legal-size paper.
ST	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 5.5x8.5" Statement paper.
EXE	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 7.25x10.5" Executive paper.
4x6in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 4x6" paper.
5x7in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 5x7" paper.
8x10in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8x10" paper.
8.46x12.4in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.46x12.4" paper.
11x15in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 11x15" paper.
PC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcards.
8kaiT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
16kaiT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
8kaiC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
16kaiC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
Monarc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc envelope.
COM10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 envelope.
DL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL envelope.
C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 envelope.
C4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C4 envelope.
CA4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 Cover paper.
CLT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-B6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.

MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper.
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper.
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-ST	Feeds from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
MSI-EXE	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Executive-size paper (7.25x10.5").
MSI-4x6in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 4x6" paper.
MSI-5x7in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 5x7" paper.
MSI-8x10in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8x10" paper.
MSI-8.46x12.4in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8.46x12.4" paper.
MSI-11x15in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 11x15" paper.
MSI-PC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.
MSI-8kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
MSI -16kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
MSI -8kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
MSI -16kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
MSI-Monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc Envelope.
MSI-COM10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 Envelope.
MSI-DL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL Envelope.
MSI-C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI-C4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C4 envelope.
MSI-CA4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 Cover paper.
MSI-CLT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.

MSI-MxNmm Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

The following non-standard sizes are available.

Smallest: 89.3x98.4 mm, Largest: 296.7x431.8 mm

[Otray_output]

Specifies the output tray.

The parameters for selecting the output tray are as follows.

fd	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
ce2	Outputs to the Centre Output Tray.
fu2	Outputs to the Face Up Tray.
fs	Outputs to the Finisher.

[C1]

This feature allows collated printing. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

[t]

Prints using the Draft Mode. The resulting print will be lighter than normal prints. For models without the "Draft Mode" function, this option will be ignored.

[E]

Select this checkbox to turn on the Image Enhancement feature. For models without the "Image Enhancement" function, this option will be ignored even if specified.

[Jo=type]

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB	job	Offset Per Job
SE	set	Offset Per Set

[M=type]

Selects a paper type for the Manual Feed. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain
RC	recycled	Recycled
H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)
H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency
TN	thin	Thin
LB	label	Labels

[CO=type...]

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
DT	detail	Fine
RH	rough	Rough

[**Pr**=*resolution*]

Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.

Stand	Standard
Fine	High Quality

◇ Example

To print to a printer named "DC286" with paper fed from Tray 1:

```
% lp -d DC286 -oI1 filename
```


◆DC1100

Refer to the following section when using Document Centre 1100/900.

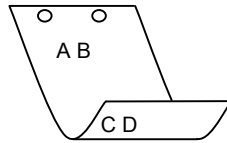
◇Execution Format

`lp [-option] filename`

◇Option

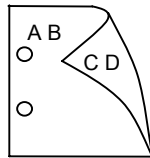
[d]

Prints using the Flip on Short Edge feature. When Flip on Short Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge.



[D]

Prints using the Flip on Long Edge feature. When Flip on Long Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge.



[Itray_input]

Specifies the paper tray.

A paper tray can be selected by directly specifying a tray or paper size.

If paper size is specified, the tray loaded with paper of the specified size will be searched and selected automatically.

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

- | | |
|----|---|
| 1 | Feeds paper from Tray 1. |
| 2 | Feeds paper from Tray 2. |
| 3 | Feeds paper from Tray 3. |
| 4 | Feeds paper from Tray 4. |
| A3 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper. |
| A4 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper. |
| A5 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper. |
| A6 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper. |
| B4 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper. |

B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
B6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
SRA3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with SRA3 (320x449.4mm) paper.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 11x17" Ledger paper.
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.5x13" Folio paper.
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.5x14" Legal-size paper.
5x7in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 5x7" paper.
11x15in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 11x15" paper.
12x18in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 12x18" paper.
12.6x19.2in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 12.6x19.2" paper.
13x18in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 13x18" paper.
13x19in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 13x19" paper.
PC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcards.
CA4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 Cover paper.
CLT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-B6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
MSI-SRA3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with SRA3 paper.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper.
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper.
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-5x7in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 5x7" paper.
MSI-11x15in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 11x15" paper.
MSI-12x18in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 12x18" paper.

MSI-12.6x19.2in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 12.6x19.2" paper.
MSI-13x18in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 13x18" paper.
MSI-13x19in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 13x19" paper.
MSI-PC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.
MSI-CA4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 Cover paper.
MSI-CLT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
MSI-MxNmm	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

The following non-standard sizes are available.

Smallest: 100.0x148.0 mm, Largest: 330.0x488.0 mm

[Otray_output]

Specifies the output tray.

The parameters for selecting the output tray are as follows.

fd	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
fs	Outputs to the Finisher.

[C1]

This feature allows collated printing. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

[t]

Prints using the Draft Mode. The resulting print will be lighter than normal prints. For models without the "Draft Mode" function, this option will be ignored.

[E]

Select this checkbox to turn on the Image Enhancement feature. For models without the "Image Enhancement" function, this option will be ignored even if specified.

[Jo=type]

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB	job	Offset Per Job
SE	set	Offset Per Set

[M=type]

Selects a paper type for the Manual Feed. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain

RC	recycled	Recycled
H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)
H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency
TN	thin	Thin
LB	label	Labels

[**Co**=*type...*]

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
DT	detail	Fine
RH	rough	Rough

[**Pr**=*resolution*]

Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.

Stand	Standard
Fine	High Quality

◇ Example

To print to a printer named "DC1100" with paper fed from Tray 1:

```
% lp -d DC1100 -oI1 filename
```

◆DC336

Refer to the following section when using Document Centre 336.

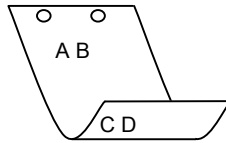
◇Execution Format

`lp [-option] filename`

◇Option

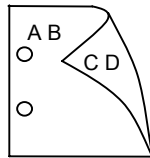
[d]

Prints using the Flip on Short Edge feature. When Flip on Short Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge.



[D]

Prints using the Flip on Long Edge feature. When Flip on Long Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge.



[Itray_input]

Specifies the paper tray.

A paper tray can be selected by directly specifying a tray or paper size.

If paper size is specified, the tray loaded with paper of the specified size will be searched and selected automatically.

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

- | | |
|----|---|
| 1 | Feeds paper from Tray 1. |
| 2 | Feeds paper from Tray 2. |
| 3 | Feeds paper from Tray 3. |
| 4 | Feeds paper from Tray 4. |
| 6 | Feeds paper from Tray 6. |
| A3 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper. |
| A4 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper. |
| A5 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper. |
| A6 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper. |

B4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
B6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
PC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcards.
MONARC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc envelope.
COM10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 envelope.
DL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL envelope.
C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 envelope.
C4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C4 envelope.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.5x13" Folio paper.
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.5x14" Legal-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 11x17" Ledger paper.
ST	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 5.5x8.5" Statement paper.
EXE	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 7.25x10.5" Executive paper.
4x6in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 4x6" paper.
5x7in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 5x7" paper.
8x10in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8x10" paper.
8.46x12.4in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.46x12.4" paper.
11x15in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 11x15" paper.
8kaiT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
16kaiT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
8kaiC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
16kaiC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
CA4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 Cover paper.
CLT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-B6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
MSI-SRA3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with SRA3

	paper.
MSI-PC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.
MSI-COM10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 envelope.
MSI-Monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc envelope.
MSI-DL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL envelope.
MSI-C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 envelope.
MSI-C4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C4 envelope.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper.
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper.
MSI-ST	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 5.5x8.5" Statement paper.
MSI-EXE	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 7.25x10.5" Executive paper.
MSI-4x6in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 4x6" paper.
MSI-5x7in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 5x7" paper.
MSI-8x10in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8x10" paper.
MSI-8.46x12.4in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8.46x12.4" paper.
MSI-11x15in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 11x15" paper.
msi-8kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
msi-16kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
msi-8kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
msi-16kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
MSI-CA4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 Cover

paper.

MSI-CLT Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.

MSI-MxNmm Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

The following non-standard sizes are available.

Smallest: 89.3x98.4 mm, Largest: 296.7x431.8 mm

[Otray_output]

Specifies the output tray.

The parameters for selecting the output tray are as follows.

fd	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
fu2	Outputs to the Face Up Tray.
fs	Outputs to the Finisher.
ce2	Outputs to the Centre Output Tray.
fst	Outputs to the Finisher Top Tray.

[C1]

This feature allows collated printing. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

[t]

Prints using the Draft Mode. The resulting print will be lighter than normal prints. For models without the "Draft Mode" function, this option will be ignored.

[E]

Select this checkbox to turn on the Image Enhancement feature. For models without the "Image Enhancement" function, this option will be ignored even if specified.

[Jo=type]

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB	job	Offset Per Job
SE	set	Offset Per Set

[M=type]

Selects a paper type for the Manual Feed. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain
RC	recycled	Recycled
H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)
H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency

TN	thin	Thin
LB	label	Labels

[**CO**=*type...*]

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
DT	detail	Fine
RH	rough	Rough

[**Pr**=*resolution*]

Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.

Stand	Standard
Fine	High Quality

◇ Example

To print to a printer named "DC336" with paper fed from Tray 1:

```
% lp -d DC336 -oI1 filename
```

◆ApeosPort 550I/450I/350I

◆DocuCentre 550I/450I

Refer to the following section when using ApeosPort 550I/450I/350I and DocuCentre 550I/450I.

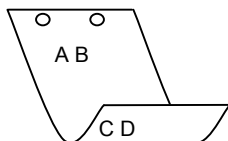
◇ Execution Format

`lp [-option] filename`

◇ Option

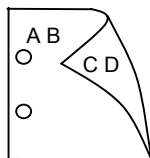
[d]

Prints using the Flip on Short Edge feature. When Flip on Short Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge.



[D]

Prints using the Flip on Long Edge feature. When Flip on Long Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge.



[Itray_input]

Specifies the paper tray.

A paper tray can be selected by directly specifying a tray or paper size.

If paper size is specified, the tray loaded with paper of the specified size will be searched and selected automatically.

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

- | | |
|----|---|
| 1 | Feeds paper from Tray 1. |
| 2 | Feeds paper from Tray 2. |
| 3 | Feeds paper from Tray 3. |
| 4 | Feeds paper from Tray 4. |
| 6 | Feeds paper from Tray 6. |
| A3 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper. |
| A4 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper. |

A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
A6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
B4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
B6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
PC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcards.
MONARC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc envelope.
COM10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 envelope.
DL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL envelope.
C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 envelope.
C4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C4 envelope.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.5x13" Folio paper.
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.5x14" Legal-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 11x17" Ledger paper.
ST	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 5.5x8.5" Statement paper.
EXE	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 7.25x10.5" Executive paper.
4x6in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 4x6" paper.
5x7in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 5x7" paper.
8x10in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8x10" paper.
8.46x12.4in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.46x12.4" paper.
11x15in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 11x15" paper.
8kaiT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
16kaiT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
8kaiC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
16kaiC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
CA4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 Cover paper.
CLT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.

MSI-B6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
MSI-PC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.
MSI-Monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc envelope.
MSI-COM10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 envelope.
MSI-DL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL envelope.
MSI -C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 envelope.
MSI-C4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C4 envelope.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper.
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper.
MSI-ST	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 5.5x8.5" Statement paper.
MSI-EXE	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 7.25x10.5" Executive paper.
MSI-4x6in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 4x6" paper.
MSI-5x7in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 5x7" paper.
MSI-8x10in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8x10" paper.
MSI-8.46x12.4in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8.46x12.4" paper.
MSI-11x15in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 11x15" paper.
msi-8kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
msi-16kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
msi-8kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
msi-16kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
MSI-CA4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 Cover

paper.

MSI-CLT Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.

MSI-*MxNmm* Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with *MxNmm* non-standard-size paper.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

The following non-standard sizes are available.

Smallest: 89.3x98.4 mm, Largest: 296.7x431.8 mm

[Otray_output]

Specifies the output tray.

The parameters for selecting the output tray are as follows.

fd	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
fu2	Outputs to the Face Up Tray.
fs	Outputs to the Finisher.
ce2	Outputs to the Centre Output Tray.
fst	Outputs to the Finisher Top Tray.

[c1]

This feature allows collated printing. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

[t]

Prints using the Draft Mode. The resulting print will be lighter than normal prints. For models without the "Draft Mode" function, this option will be ignored.

[E]

Select this checkbox to turn on the Image Enhancement feature. For models without the "Image Enhancement" function, this option will be ignored even if specified.

[Jo=type]

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB	job	Offset Per Job
SE	set	Offset Per Set

[M=type]

Selects a paper type for the Manual Feed. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain
RC	recycled	Recycled
H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)
H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency

TN	thin	Thin
LB	label	Labels

[**Co**=*type...*]

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
DT	detail	Fine
RH	rough	Rough

[**Pr**=*resolution*]

Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.

Stand	Standard
Fine	High Quality

◇ Example

To print to a printer named "AP550I" with paper fed from Tray 1:

```
% lp -d AP550I -oI1 filename
```

◆ApeosPort 750I/650I

◆DocuCentre 750I/650I

Refer to the following section when using ApeosPort 750I/650I and DocuCentre 750I/650I.

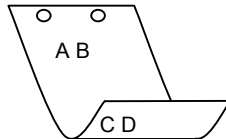
◇Execution Format

```
lp [-option] filename
```

◇Option

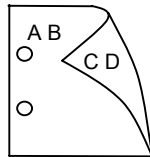
[d]

Prints using the Flip on Short Edge feature. When Flip on Short Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge.



[D]

Prints using the Flip on Long Edge feature. When Flip on Long Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge.



[Itray_input]

Specifies the paper tray.

A paper tray can be selected by directly specifying a tray or paper size.

If paper size is specified, the tray loaded with paper of the specified size will be searched and selected automatically.

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

- | | |
|----|---|
| 1 | Feeds paper from Tray 1. |
| 2 | Feeds paper from Tray 2. |
| 3 | Feeds paper from Tray 3. |
| 4 | Feeds paper from Tray 4. |
| 6 | Feeds paper from Tray 6. |
| A3 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper. |
| A4 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper. |

A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
A6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
B4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
B6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
SRA3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with SRA3 paper.
PC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcards.
C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 envelope.
C4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C4 envelope.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.5x13" Folio paper.
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.5x14" Legal-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 11x17" Ledger paper.
ST	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 5.5x8.5" Statement paper.
EXE	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 7.25x10.5" Executive paper.
4x6in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 4x6" paper.
5x7in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 5x7" paper.
8x10in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8x10" paper.
8.46x12.4in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.46x12.4" paper.
11x15in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 11x15" paper.
12x18in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 12x18" paper.
12.6x19.2in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 12.6x19.2" paper.
13x18in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 13x18" paper.
13x19in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 13x19" paper.
8kaiT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
16kaiT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
8kaiC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
16kaiC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
Monarc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc paper.
CA4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 Cover paper.
CLT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.

MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-B6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
MSI-SRA3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with SRA3 paper.
MSI-PC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.
MSI -C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 envelope.
MSI-C4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C4 envelope.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper.
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper.
MSI-ST	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 5.5x8.5" Statement paper.
MSI-EXE	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 7.25x10.5" Executive paper.
MSI-4x6in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 4x6" paper.
MSI-5x7in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 5x7" paper.
MSI-8x10in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8x10" paper.
MSI-8.46x12.4in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8.46x12.4" paper.
MSI-11x15in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 11x15" paper.
MSI-12x18in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 12x18" paper.
MSI-12.6x19.2in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 12.6x19.2" paper.
MSI-13x18in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 13x18" paper.
MSI-13x19in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 13x19" paper.
msi-8kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.

msi-16kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
msi-8kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
msi-16kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
MSI-CA4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 Cover paper.
MSI-CLT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
MSI-MxNmm	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

The following non-standard sizes are available.

Smallest: 100.2x148.2 mm, Largest: 329.8x487.9 mm

[Otray_output]

Specifies the output tray.

The parameters for selecting the output tray are as follows.

fd	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
fs	Outputs to the Finisher.

[C1]

This feature allows collated printing. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

[t]

Prints using the Draft Mode. The resulting print will be lighter than normal prints. For models without the "Draft Mode" function, this option will be ignored.

[E]

Select this checkbox to turn on the Image Enhancement feature. For models without the "Image Enhancement" function, this option will be ignored even if specified.

[Jo=type]

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB	job	Offset Per Job
SE	set	Offset Per Set

[M=type]

Selects a paper type for the Manual Feed. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain
RC	recycled	Recycled

H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)
H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency
TN	thin	Thin
HO	holed	Punched
LB1	label1	Label 1
LB2	label2	Label 2
TB1	tabbed1	Indexed 1
TB2	tabbed2	Indexed 2

[**CO**=*type*...]

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
DT	detail	Fine
RH	rough	Rough

[**Pr**=*resolution*]

Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.

Stand	Standard
Fine	High Quality

◇ Example

To print to a printer named "AP750I" with paper fed from Tray 1:

```
% lp -d AP750I -oI1 filename
```

DC23005

Refer to the following section when using DocuCentre-II 3005/2055/2005.

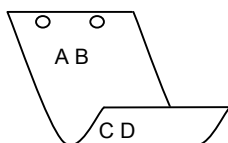
◇ Execution Format

`lp [-option] filename`

◇ Option

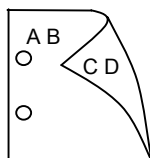
[d]

Prints using the Flip on Short Edge feature. When Flip on Short Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge.



[D]

Prints using the Flip on Long Edge feature. When Flip on Long Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge.



[Itray_input]

Specifies the paper tray.

A paper tray can be selected by directly specifying a tray or paper size.

If paper size is specified, the tray loaded with paper of the specified size will be searched and selected automatically.

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
A3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
A4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
A6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
B4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.

B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
B6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 envelope.
C4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C4 envelope.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.5x13" Folio paper.
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.5x14" Legal-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 11x17" Ledger paper.
4x6in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 4x6" paper.
5x7in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 5x7" paper.
11x15in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 11x15" paper.
8kaiT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
16kaiT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
8kaiC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
16kaiC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
com10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 envelope.
monarc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc envelope.
CA4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 Cover paper.
CLT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-B6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
MSI -C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 envelope.
MSI-C4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C4 envelope.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper.
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.

MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper.
MSI-Monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc envelope.
MSI-COM10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 envelope.
MSI-4x6in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 4x6" paper.
MSI-5x7in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 5x7" paper.
MSI-11x15in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 11x15" paper.
msi-8kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
msi-16kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
msi-8kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
msi-16kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
MSI-CA4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 Cover paper.
MSI-CLT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
MSI-MxNmm	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

The following non-standard sizes are available.

Smallest: 139.7x182.0 mm, Largest: 297.0x432.0 mm

[Otray_output]

Specifies the output tray.

The parameters for selecting the output tray are as follows.

fd	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
fs	Outputs to the Finisher.

[C1]

This feature allows collated printing. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

[t]

Prints using the Draft Mode. The resulting print will be lighter than normal prints. For models without the "Draft Mode" function, this option will be ignored.

[E]

Select this checkbox to turn on the Image Enhancement feature. For models

without the "Image Enhancement" function, this option will be ignored even if specified.

[**Jo**=*type*]

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB	job	Offset Per Job
SE	set	Offset Per Set

[**M**=*type*]

Selects a paper type for the Manual Feed. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain
RC	recycled	Recycled
H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)
H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency
TN	thin	Thin
LB	label	Labels

[**CO**=*type*...]

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
DT	detail	Fine
RH	rough	Rough

[**Pr**=*resolution*]

Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.

Stand	Standard
Fine	High Quality

◇ Example

To print to a printer named "DC23005" with paper fed from Tray 1:

```
% lp -d DC23005 -oI1 filename
```

◆ApeosPort-II 5010/4000/3000

◆DocuCentre-II 5010/4000

Refer to the following section when using ApeosPort 5010/4000/3000 and DocuCentre 5010/4000.

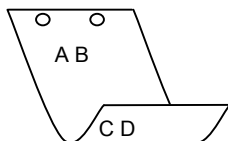
◇ Execution Format

`lp [-option] filename`

◇ Option

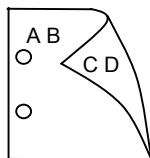
[d]

Prints using the Flip on Short Edge feature. When Flip on Short Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge.



[D]

Prints using the Flip on Long Edge feature. When Flip on Long Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge.



[Itray_input]

Specifies the paper tray.

A paper tray can be selected by directly specifying a tray or paper size.

If paper size is specified, the tray loaded with paper of the specified size will be searched and selected automatically.

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

- | | |
|----|---|
| 1 | Feeds paper from Tray 1. |
| 2 | Feeds paper from Tray 2. |
| 3 | Feeds paper from Tray 3. |
| 4 | Feeds paper from Tray 4. |
| 6 | Feeds paper from Tray 6. |
| A3 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper. |
| A4 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper. |

A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
A6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
B4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
B6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
PC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcards.
MONARC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc envelope.
COM10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 envelope.
DL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL envelope.
C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 envelope.
C4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C4 envelope.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.5x13" Folio paper.
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.5x14" Legal-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 11x17" Ledger paper.
ST	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 5.5x8.5" Statement paper.
EXE	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 7.25x10.5" Executive paper.
4x6in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 4x6" paper.
5x7in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 5x7" paper.
8x10in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8x10" paper.
8.46x12.4in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.46x12.4" paper.
11x15in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 11x15" paper.
8kaiT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
16kaiT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
8kaiC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
16kaiC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
CA4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 Cover paper.
CLT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.

MSI-B6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
MSI-PC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.
MSI-Monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc envelope.
MSI-COM10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 envelope.
MSI-DL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL envelope.
MSI -C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 envelope.
MSI-C4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C4 envelope.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper.
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper.
MSI-ST	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 5.5x8.5" Statement paper.
MSI-EXE	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 7.25x10.5" Executive paper.
MSI-4x6in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 4x6" paper.
MSI-5x7in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 5x7" paper.
MSI-8x10in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8x10" paper.
MSI-8.46x12.4in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8.46x12.4" paper.
MSI-11x15in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 11x15" paper.
msi-8kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
msi-16kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
msi-8kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
msi-16kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
MSI-CA4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 Cover

paper.

MSI-CLT Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.

MSI-*MxNmm* Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with *MxNmm* non-standard-size paper.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

The following non-standard sizes are available.

Smallest: 89.3x98.4 mm, Largest: 296.7x431.8 mm

[Otray_output]

Specifies the output tray.

The parameters for selecting the output tray are as follows.

fd	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
fu2	Outputs to the Face Up Tray.
fs	Outputs to the Finisher.
ce2	Outputs to the Centre Output Tray.
fst	Outputs to the Finisher Top Tray.

[c1]

This feature allows collated printing. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

[t]

Prints using the Draft Mode. The resulting print will be lighter than normal prints. For models without the "Draft Mode" function, this option will be ignored.

[E]

Select this checkbox to turn on the Image Enhancement feature. For models without the "Image Enhancement" function, this option will be ignored even if specified.

[Jo=type]

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB	job	Offset Per Job
SE	set	Offset Per Set

[M=type]

Selects a paper type for the Manual Feed. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain
RC	recycled	Recycled
H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)
H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency

TN	thin	Thin
LB	label	Labels

[**Co**=*type...*]

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
DT	detail	Fine
RH	rough	Rough

[**Pr**=*resolution*]

Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.

Stand	Standard
Fine	High Quality

◇ Example

To print to a printer named "AP24000" with paper fed from Tray 1:

```
% lp -d AP24000 -oI1 filename
```

◆ApeosPort-II 7000/6000

◆DocuCentre-II 7000/6000

Refer to the following section when using ApeosPort-II 7000/6000 and DocuCentre-II 7000/6000.

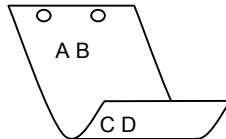
◇Execution Format

```
lp [-option] filename
```

◇Option

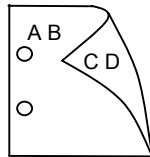
[d]

Prints using the Flip on Short Edge feature. When Flip on Short Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge.



[D]

Prints using the Flip on Long Edge feature. When Flip on Long Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge.



[Itray_input]

Specifies the paper tray.

A paper tray can be selected by directly specifying a tray or paper size.

If paper size is specified, the tray loaded with paper of the specified size will be searched and selected automatically.

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

- | | |
|----|---|
| 1 | Feeds paper from Tray 1. |
| 2 | Feeds paper from Tray 2. |
| 3 | Feeds paper from Tray 3. |
| 4 | Feeds paper from Tray 4. |
| 6 | Feeds paper from Tray 6. |
| 7 | Feeds paper from Tray 7. |
| A3 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper. |

A4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
A6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
B4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
B6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
PC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcards.
C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 envelope.
C4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C4 envelope.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.5x13" Folio paper.
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.5x14" Legal-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 11x17" Ledger paper.
5x7in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 5x7" paper.
11x15in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 11x15" paper.
12x18in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 12x18" paper.
CA4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 Cover paper.
CLT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
<i>MxNmm</i>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with <i>MxNmm</i> non-standard-size paper. <i>M</i> (width) and <i>N</i> (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-B6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
MSI-PC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.
MSI-C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 envelope.
MSI-C4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C4 envelope.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper.
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-

	size paper.
MSI-5x7in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 5x7" paper.
MSI-11x15in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 11x15" paper.
MSI-12x18in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 12x18" paper.
MSI-CA4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 Cover paper.
MSI-CLT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
MSI-MxNmm	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

The following non-standard sizes are available.

Smallest: 100.2x148.2 mm, Largest: 304.8x456.8 mm

[Otray_output]

Specifies the output tray.

The parameters for selecting the output tray are as follows.

fd	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
fs	Outputs to the Finisher.

[C1]

This feature allows collated printing. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

[t]

Prints using the Draft Mode. The resulting print will be lighter than normal prints. For models without the "Draft Mode" function, this option will be ignored.

[E]

Select this checkbox to turn on the Image Enhancement feature. For models without the "Image Enhancement" function, this option will be ignored even if specified.

[Jo=type]

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB	job	Offset Per Job
SE	set	Offset Per Set

[M=type]

Selects a paper type for the Manual Feed. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain

RC	recycled	Recycled
H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)
H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency
TN	thin	Thin
HO	holed	Punched
LB1	label1	Label 1
LB2	label2	Label 2
TB1	tabbed1	Indexed 1
TB2	tabbed2	Indexed 2

[**co**=*type...*]

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
DT	detail	Fine
RH	rough	Rough

[**Pr**=*resolution*]

Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.

Stand	Standard
Fine	High Quality

◇ Example

To print to a printer named "AP27000" with paper fed from Tray 1:

```
% lp -d A27000 -oI1 filename
```


3.4 Utility Overview

3.4.1 List of Utilities

The following utilities are available.

[Solaris]

File Name	Details of Function	Reference
euc2ps2/txt2ps2	Converts text files written in EUC codes into PostScript language programs.	3.5
sunras2ps2	Converts SunRaster format image files into PostScript language programs.	3.6
sunras2g4	Converts SunRaster format image files into G4 format.	3.7
tiff2ps2	Converts TIFF format image files into PostScript language programs.	3.8
tiff2g4	Converts TIFF format image files into G4 format.	3.9
xwd2ps2	Converts XWD format image files into PostScript language programs.	3.10
xwd2g4	Converts XWD format image files into G4 format.	3.11
fxpif	Adds operator for specifying paper tray in PostScript language program data.	3.12
posteuc.fd	This is the filter description file for euc2ps2.	3.18
posteuc205.fd	This is the filter description file for euc2ps2.	3.19
posttxt240A.fd	This is the filter description file for txt2ps2.	3.20
posteucSP.fd	This is the filter description file for euc2ps2.	3.21
FXDC250.fd	This is the fxpif filter description file for Document Centre 250/350/400. It adds an operator that specifies the paper tray in the PostScript language program data.	3.22
FXDC451.fd	This is the fxpif filter description file for Document Centre 451/551. It adds an operator that specifies the paper tray in the PostScript language program data.	3.23
FXDC506.fd	This is the fxpif filter description file for Document Centre 506/606/706. It adds an operator that specifies the paper tray in the PostScript language program data.	3.24
FXDC235.fd	This is the fxpif filter description file for Document Centre 235/285/405. It adds an operator that specifies the paper tray in the PostScript language program data.	3.25
FXDP205.fd	This is the fxpif filter description file for Document Centre 205/255/305. It adds an operator that specifies the paper tray in the PostScript language program data.	3.26
FXDP240A.fd	This is the fxpif filter description file for DocuPrint 240A/340A. It adds an operator that specifies the paper tray in the PostScript language program data.	3.27
FXDC186.fd	This is the fxpif filter description file for Document Centre 1085/1055/186/156. It adds an operator that specifies the paper tray in the PostScript language program data.	3.28

FXDC286.fd	This is the fxpif filter description file for Document Centre 286/236. It adds an operator that specifies the paper tray in the PostScript language program data.	3.29
FXDC1100.fd	This is the fxpif filter description file for Document Centre 1100/900. It adds an operator that specifies the paper tray in the PostScript language program data.	3.30
FXDC336.fd	This is the fxpif filter description file for Document Centre 336. It adds an operator that specifies the paper tray in the PostScript language program data.	3.31
FXAP550I.fd/ FXDC550I.fd	These are the fxpif filter description files for ApeosPort 550 I/450 I/350 I and Document Centre 550 I/450 I respectively. It adds an operator that specifies the paper tray in the PostScript language program data.	3.32
FXAP750I.fd/ FXDC750I.fd	This are the fxpif filter description files for ApeosPort 550 I/450 I/350 I and Document Centre 750 I/650 I respectively. It adds an operator that specifies the paper tray in the PostScript language program data.	3.33
FXDC23005.fd	This is the fxpif filter description file for DocuCentre-II 3005/2055/2005. It adds an operator that specifies the paper tray in the PostScript language program data.	3.34
FXAP24000.fd/ FXDC24000.fd	These are the fxpif filter description files for ApeosPort-II 5010/4000/3000 and Document Centre-II 5010/4000/3000 respectively. It adds an operator that specifies the paper tray in the PostScript language program data..	3.35
FXAP27000.fd/ FXDC27000.fd	These are the fxpif filter description files for ApeosPort-II 7000/6000 and Document Centre-II 7000/6000 respectively. It adds an operator that specifies the paper tray in the PostScript language program data.	3.36

[Linux]

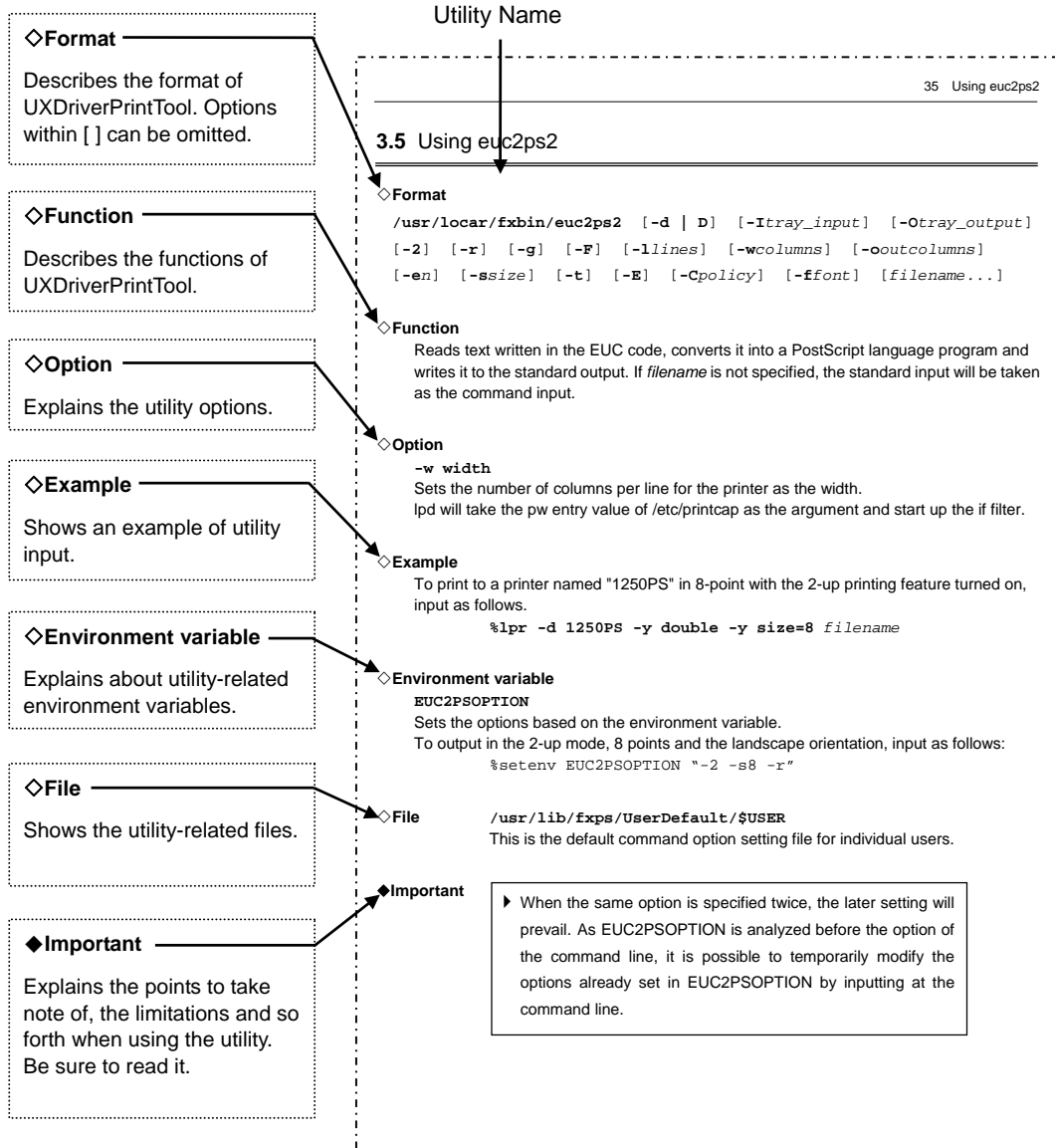
File Name	Details of Function	Reference
euc2ps2/txt2ps2	Converts text files written in EUC codes into PostScript language programs.	3.5
tiff2ps2	Converts TIFF format image files into PostScript language programs.	3.8
tiff2g4	Converts TIFF format image files into G4 format PostScript language programs.	3.9
xwd2ps2	Converts XWD format image files into PostScript language programs.	3.10
xwd2g4	Converts XWD format image files into G4 format PostScript language programs.	3.11
fxpif	This is the text string output filter that is activated by the lpr command.	3.12
fxpvf	This is the raster data output filter that is activated by the lpr command.	3.13
fxpg4f	Converts raster data, started up by the lpr command, into G4 format PostScript language programs.	3.14
fxpof	This is the banner output filter that is activated by the lpr command.	3.15
fxoption	This is the command for modifying the default command option file.	3.16

[HP-UX]

File Name	Details of Function	Reference
euc2ps2/txt2ps2	Converts text files written in EUC codes into PostScript language programs.	3.5
tiff2ps2	Converts TIFF format image files into PostScript language programs.	3.8
tiff2g4	Converts TIFF format image files into G4 format PostScript language programs.	3.9
xwd2ps2	Converts XWD format image files into PostScript language programs.	3.10
xwd2g4	Converts XWD format image files into G4 format PostScript language programs.	3.11

3.4.2 Utility Format

Sections "3.5 euc2ps2" and later will explain the usage of the utilities in the following format.



3.5 euc2ps2/txt2ps2 (Solaris/Linux/HP-UX)

Important In the case of DP240A, please use txt2ps2 as the command and TXT2PSOPTION as the environment variable.

◇ Format

```
/usr/local/fxbin/euc2ps2 [-d | -D] [-Itray_input] [-Otray_output]
[-2] [-r] [-F] [-llines] [-wcolumns] [-ooutcolumns] [-Loutlines]
[-en] [-ssize] [-t] [-E] [-Cpolicy]
[-mg=upmargin:bottommargin:rightmargin:leftmargin] [-ffont]
[-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-ps] [-TX] [-Hd=position:format:page]
[-Hfheaderfont] [filename...]

/usr/local/fxbin205/euc2ps2 [-d | -D] [-Itray_input]
[-Otray_output] [-2] [-r] [-F] [-llines] [-wcolumns] [-ooutcolumns]
[-Loutlines] [-en] [-ssize] [-t] [-E]
[-mg=upmargin:bottommargin:rightmargin:leftmargin] [-ffont]
[-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-ps] [-TX] [-Hd=position:format:page]
[-Hfheaderfont] [-Jo=type] [-M=type] [-Pr=resolution] [-CO=type...]
[filename...]

/usr/local/fxbinSP/euc2ps2 [-d | -D] [-Itray_input] [-Otray_output]
[-2] [-r] [-F] [-llines] [-wcolumns] [-ooutcolumns] [-Loutlines]
[-en] [-ssize] [-t] [-E]
[-mg=upmargin:bottommargin:rightmargin:leftmargin] [-ffont]
[-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-ps] [-TX] [-Hd=position:format:page]
[-Hfheaderfont] [-Jo=type] [-M=type] [-Pr=resolution] [-CO=type...]
[filename...]

/usr/local/fxbin240A/txt2ps2 [-d | -D] [-Itray_input]
[-Otray_output] [-Jjog] [-t] [-2] [-r] [-F] [-llines] [-wcolumns]
[-ooutcolumns] [-Loutlines] [-en] [-ssize] [-E] [-ffont]
[-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-ps]
[-mg=upmargin:bottommargin:rightmargin:leftmargin]
[-Hd=position:format:page] [-Hfheaderfont] [filename...]
```

◇ Function

Reads text written in EUC code, converts it into a PostScript language program and writes it to the standard output. If *filename* is not specified, the standard input will be taken as the command input.

By entering text strings in the environment variable EUC2PSOPTION, input of options can be omitted in the command line.

If no option is specified in the environment variable EUC2PSOPTION or in the command line, the output will be in 10-point font size and in the portrait orientation.

If the same option is specified in the environment variable EUC2PSOPTION and in the command line, the command line specification will prevail.

euc2ps2 will output a PostScript language program that adjusts the number of lines according to the paper size. For this reason, there is no need to pay special attention to the paper size. If there is an option for specifying the number of lines, automatic line feed based on paper size will not be carried out. Instead, the output will be based on the line specification.

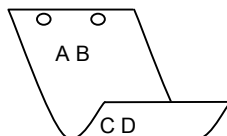
euc2ps2 will interpret the following control codes. Other control codes or undefined codes will be converted to octal numbers and output as-is.

LF	Line feed
FF	Form feed (can be modified by option)
TAB	8-column tab stop (can be modified by option)
BS	Backspace 1 character

◇ Option

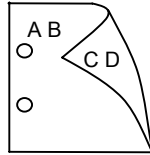
[-d]

Prints using the Flip on Short Edge feature. When Flip on Short Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge. This option is valid only for models with the 2 Sided Print feature. If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, 2 Sided Print will not be executed for other than DocuPrint 205/255/305.



[-D]

Prints using the Flip on Long Edge feature. When Flip on Long Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge. This option is valid only for models with the 2 Sided Print feature. If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, 2 Sided Print will not be executed for other than DocuPrint 205/255/305.

**[-Itray_input]**

Specifies the paper tray.

A paper tray can be selected by directly specifying a tray or paper size.

If paper size is specified, the tray loaded with paper of the specified size will be searched and selected automatically.

[For Mono and MonoSP]

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
m1	This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 1.
m2	This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 2.
m3	This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 3.
A3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
A4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
A6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
B4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
B6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
ST	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").

PC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcards.
COM10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 Envelope.
Monarc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc Envelope.
DL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL Envelope.
C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.
Pakai	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K paper.
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-B6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-ST	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
MSI-PC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.
MSI-COM10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 Envelope.
MSI-Monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc Envelope.
MSI-DL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL Envelope.
MSI-C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI-Pakai	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8K paper.
MSI-EC3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Choukei 3 Envelope.
MSI-LP	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with long paper.
MSI-MxNmm	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper. <i>M</i> (width) and <i>N</i> (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

[For DP240A]

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
A4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
A6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
EX	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Executive-size paper.
MO	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc Envelope.
COM10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 Envelope.
DL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL Envelope.
C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.
LP 210x900	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with long paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-EX	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Executive-size paper (7.25x10.5").
MSI-COM10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 Envelope.
MSI-MO	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc Envelope.
MSI-DL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL Envelope.
MSI-C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI-LP210x900	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with long paper.

MxNmm	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper. M (width) and N (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).
MxNin	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with MxNin non-standard-size paper. M (width) and N (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

[For Mono2]

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
A3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
A4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
A6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
B4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
B6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
ST	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
EXE	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Executive-size paper (7.25x10.5").
PC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcards.
DPC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with pre-paid postcards.
EC3Y	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Choukei 3 Envelope.
EY4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Youkei 4 Envelope.
COM10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 Envelope.
Monarc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc Envelope.
DL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL Envelope.
C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.
C4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.

MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-B6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-ST	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
MSI-EXE	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Executive-size paper (7.25x10.5").
MSI-PC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.
MSI-DPC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with pre-paid postcards.
MSI-EC3Y	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Choukei 3 Envelope.
MSI-EY4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Youkei 4 Envelope.
MSI-COM10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 Envelope.
MSI-Monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc Envelope.
MSI-DL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL Envelope.
MSI-C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI-C4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI- <i>MxNmm</i>	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with <i>MxNmm</i> non-standard-size paper. <i>M</i> (width) and <i>N</i> (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

For sizes that cannot be output, printing will be output to the paper from the default tray.

The following non-standard sizes are available for the respective models.

For Mono and MonoSP

Smallest: 86.1x148.2 mm, Largest: 304.8x508.0 mm

If a size not supported by the printer is specified, it will result in an error.

For DP240A

Smallest: 75.5x127.0 mm, Largest: 215.9x355.6 mm

For Mono2

Smallest: 76.2x98.4 mm, Largest: 304.8x508.0 mm

297x900 mm and 210x900 mm long paper will be taken as non-standard sizes.

AutoPT Paper will be fed from the tray loaded with the paper type specified in the **[M=type]** option.

See For information on sizes that can be output, refer to the printer manual.

[-Otray_output]

Specifies the output tray.

The parameters for selecting the output tray are as follows.

fd	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
fu	Outputs to the Face Up Tray.
mn	Outputs to bin n of the Mailbox. The value of n is any number from 1 to 10.
stn	Outputs n copies to the Sorter. The value of n is any number from 1 to 10.
fs	Selects the Finisher automatically.
fsn	Outputs to bin n of the Finisher. The value of n is any number from 1 to 3. (Not applicable to Document Centre 506/606/706 and Document Centre 235/285/405.)
fstm	Outputs to the Main Tray of the Finisher. (Only applicable to Document Centre 506/606/706.)
fst1	Outputs to Tray 1 of the Finisher. (Only applicable to Document Centre 235/285/405.) Important Finisher Tray 1 refers to the lower tray for Document Centre 235/285/405.
fst2	Outputs to Tray 2 of the Finisher. (Only applicable to Document Centre 506/606/706 and Document Centre 235/285/405.) Important Finisher Tray 2 refers to the upper tray for Document Centre 235/285/405.
of	Outputs to the Offset Catch Tray.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be output to the default tray (Factory settings: Face Down Tray).

If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, it cannot be output to the Mailbox or the Sorter. If the Mailbox and Sorter are specified, it will output to the Face Down Tray.

If the Finisher is specified, paper can be output to the specified tray but it will not

be stapled or hole-punched.

[For DP240A]

The parameters for selecting the output tray are as follows.

ce	Outputs to the Center Tray.
re	Outputs to the Rear Tray.
of	Outputs to the Offset Catch Tray.

[**-t**]

Prints using the Draft Mode. The resulting print will be lighter than normal prints. For models without the "Draft Mode" function, this option will be ignored.

[**-2**]

Prints in two stages.

[**-r**]

Rotates the output by 90 degrees and uses the paper in the landscape orientation.

[**-F**]

Ignores the Form Feed Code (FF).

[**-l***lines*]

Specifies the number of lines per page.

[**-w***columns*]

Specifies the number of columns per line.

[**-o***outcolumns*]

Converts print data to single-byte text and starts printing from outcolumns.

[**-L***outlines*]

Prints text from the outlines column.

[**-en**]

Expands horizontal tabs to n columns (space). The default is 8.

[**-s***size*]

Specifies the font size in size points. The default is 10 points.

[**-mg**=*upmargin:bottommargin:rightmargin:leftmargin*]

Specifies the page margins in inches. The upmargin, bottommargin, rightmargin, and leftmargin are positive real numbers (up to two decimal places). The default is 0.

-mg=0:0:0:3 Sets the left margin to 3 inches.

-mg=3:3:0:5 Sets the top margin to 3 inches; bottom margin, 3 inches; and left margin, 5 inches.

If the margin is 0, it can be omitted.

-mg=:::3 Sets the left margin to 3 inches.

[**-E**]

Select this checkbox to turn on the Image Enhancement feature. For models without the "Image Enhancement" function, this option will be ignored even if specified.

[**-C***policy*]

This option is not applicable for the supported printers.

[-f*font*]

Specifies the font for printing single-byte alphanumeric characters.

- To specify a font, input the font name as-is after the "-f" option.

% euc2ps2 -fCourier-Oblique *filename*

See For information on the fonts that can be used, refer to "Appendix B Available Fonts" or the printer manual.

[-N*c=copies*]

Specifies the number of output copies (the value of *copies* must be a positive integer).

[-C1]

Specifies print output by set. It is valid only on models that support this function. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

[-ps]

Processes the input file as a PostScript file. If the file does not begin with "%!", "%!" will be output to the first line. If the file contains "%!", it will be processed in the same way as fxpif.

[-TX]

Specify this option when printing PostScript language files as text files. If this option is not specified, euc2ps2 processes the file as a PostScript file. (Applicable only to HP-UX) (Not applicable for DP240A)

[-H*d=position:format:page*]

Outputs the output user information as header/footer in specified locations.

position specifies the output position. However, this specification is valid only for text file conversion. Output will normally be made to the bottom left in the case of PostScript file conversion.

ul	Outputs to the top left of the paper.
ur	Outputs to the top right of the paper.
dl	Outputs to the bottom left of the paper.
dr	Outputs to the bottom right of the paper.

format specifies the output contents and sequence. This specification can be omitted.

If this option is omitted, "uh" will become the default.

u	User Name
h	Host Name
t	Date/Time

The output will be as follows if "tuh" is specified as the output contents.

2002/11/11 Fri 01:23:45 GMT User:username Host:hostname

page refers to the page to be output. This specification can be omitted.

f	Output only the first page (default for PostScript file conversion)
a	Output all pages (default for text file conversion)

Specify as follows.

To output the user name and host name accordingly to the top right on all pages during text file conversion:

(There is no need to specify the user name, host name and output all pages as these are the default settings.)

-Hd=ur

-Hd=ur:uh

-Hd=ur:uh:a

To output the date/time and host name accordingly to the bottom left of all pages during PostScript file conversion:

(As output only first page is the default for PostScript file conversion, make sure that "a" is specified.)

-Hd=dl:th:a

Important If the paper size is not specified, the header/footer will be output at the location in A4 paper by default. If the paper size is specified with the lp command, the output position of the header/footer will not be changed from the paper size position processed using euc2ps2. To specify the paper size, specify it when using the header/footer option.

During PostScript file conversion, there may be no output even if output all pages was specified. If this happens, specify to output only the first page.

The specification of the time zone (JST, GMT, etc.) for date/time can be done via the environment variable TZ.

[**-Hf***headerFont*]

Specifies the font for printing the header/footer. Single-byte alphanumeric European fonts and single-byte alphanumeric characters can be used. The default is Helvetica.

Note If an incorrect font is specified, the default European font of the printer will be used.

If the header/footer output option is not specified, the header/footer font specification will be ignored.

The following options are for Mono2.

[**Jo**=*type*]

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB	job	Offset Per Job
SE	set	Offset Per Set

[**M**=*type*]

Selects a paper type. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain
RC	recycled	Recycled
H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)
H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency

[**CO**=*type*...]

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
DT	detail	Fine
RH	rough	Rough

[**Pr**=*resolution*]

Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.

Stand	Standard
Fine	High Quality

The following options are for DP240A.

[**-J***jog*]

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

no	No offset
job	Offset Per Job
set	Offset Per Set

◇ Example

To convert the program list of the "file1.c" file into a PostScript language program that prints on paper in the landscape orientation and in the 2-up mode, input as follows:

```
% euc2ps -2r file1.c
```

To convert file1 into a PostScript language program and output to the file1.ps file, input as follows:

```
% euc2ps2 file1 > file1.ps
```

To convert the output result of the command into a PostScript language program using euc2ps2 and print to the printer, input as follows:

```
% ls | euc2ps2 | lpr          (Linux)
% ls | euc2ps2 | lp           (Solaris/HP-UX)
```

◇ Environment variable

EUC2PSOPTION

Setting the option based on the environment variable EUC2PSOPTION

To output in the 2-up mode, 8 points and in the landscape orientation, input as follows:

```
% setenv EUC2PSOPTION "-2 -s8 -r"
```

To use the same options as those of the fxpif filter specified by printcap, input as follows:
(Applicable only to Linux)

```
% setenv EUC2PSOPTION "<fxpif>"
```

◇ File

This is the default command option setup file (Linux) for individual users.

```
$HOME/.fxpsdefault
```

```
$HOME/.fxpsdefault205
```

```
$HOME/.fxpsdefault240A
```

◆ Important

- ▶ When the same option is specified twice, the later setting will prevail. As EUC2PSOPTION is analyzed before options in the command line, it is possible to temporarily modify the options already set in EUC2PSOPTION by specifying in the command line.
- ▶ The comment description (%%page:m n) of the page number cannot be output to the PostScript program file output by the default option of euc2ps2. Hence, when the output of euc2ps2 is to be taken as the input of another application (psrev of TRANSCRIPT, etc.), insert the line number specification (*-lines*) and add the page number description.
- ▶ If a BS code is found at the beginning of a line, the print position of the next character will be to the left of the beginning of the line.
- ▶ If there are multiple tab codes in one line, the tab positions may not align in the case of an automatic line feed. If this happens, specify the *-l* or *-w* option.
- ▶ The number of columns specified by the *-w* option does not reflect the number of characters actually printed. The actual number of single-byte characters to be printed is derived by deducting the output column position (outcolumns) specified by the *-o* option from the number of columns specified by the *-w* option.
- ▶ The *-mg* option cannot be specified when the *-w*, *-l*, *-o*, and *-L* options are specified.
- ▶ The start positions of margins of the margin specification option (*-mg=u:b:r:l*) are not set against the edge of paper but from the margins of the printable area of the printer for the respective paper.
- ▶ The margins are set against the printable area for paper allowed by the printer. For more information, refer to the printer manual.
- ▶ Use the *-ps* option only when a PostScript file that contains no "%" at the beginning of the file is used as a PostScript file.
- ▶ If a normal text file is input, it will not function correctly.
- ▶ In HP-UX, if a file written in the PostScript language (beginning with %!) is specified, euc2ps2 adds only the options to the original file and prints. Specify this option when printing PostScript language files as text files.

3.6 sunras2ps2 (Solaris)

◇ Format

```

/usr/local/fxbin/sunras2ps2 [-d | -D] [-Itray_input]
[-Otray_output] [-r] [-n] [-l left bottom] [-s width height]
[-S width] [-t] [-E] [-Cpolicy] [-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-G4]
[-Hd=position:format] [-Hfheaderfont] [filename...]

/usr/local/fxbin205/sunras2ps2 [-d | -D] [-Itray_input]
[-Otray_output] [-r] [-n] [-l left bottom] [-s width height]
[-S width] [-t] [-E] [-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-G4] [-Hd=position:format]
[-Hfheaderfont] [-Jo=type] [-M=type] [-Pr=resolution] [-CO=type...]
[filename...]

/usr/local/fxbinSP/sunras2ps2 [-d | -D] [-Itray_input]
[-Otray_output] [-r] [-n] [-l left bottom] [-s width height]
[-S width] [-t] [-E] [-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-G4] [-Hd=position:format]
[-Hfheaderfont] [-Jo=type] [-M=type] [-Pr=resolution] [-CO=type...]
[filename...]

/usr/local/fxbin240A/sunras2ps2 [-d | -D] [-Itray_input]
[-Otray_output] [-r] [-n] [-l=left,bottom] [-s=width,height]
[-S=width] [-t] [-E] [-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-G4] [-Hd=position:format]
[-Hfheaderfont] [filename...]

```

◇ Function

Reads SunRaster format data, converts into a PostScript language program and writes to the standard output. If *filename* is not specified, the standard input will be taken as the command input. SunRaster format files with a pixel depth of 1, 8, 24 or 32 bits can be specified.

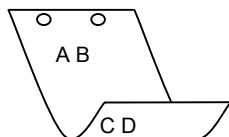
sunras2ps2 takes *filename* as having been created in 72dpi and calculates the output size. Thus, to convert SunRaster format files created in other resolutions, specify the size option (-s, -S) explicitly for conversion.

◇ Option

[-d]

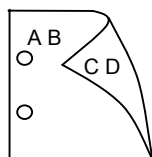
Prints using the Flip on Short Edge feature. When Flip on Short Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge.

This option is valid only for models with the 2 Sided Print feature. If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, 2 Sided Print will not be executed for DocuPrint 205/255/305.



[-D]

Prints using the Flip on Long Edge feature. When Flip on Long Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge. This option is valid only for models with the 2 Sided Print feature. If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, 2 Sided Print will not be executed for DocuPrint 205/255/305.



[-Itray_input]

Specifies the paper tray.

A paper tray can be selected by directly specifying a tray or paper size.

If paper size is specified, the tray loaded with paper of the specified size will be searched and selected automatically.

[For Mono and MonoSP]

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

- | | |
|----|---|
| 1 | Feeds paper from Tray 1. |
| 2 | Feeds paper from Tray 2. |
| 3 | Feeds paper from Tray 3. |
| 4 | Feeds paper from Tray 4. |
| m1 | This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 1. |
| m2 | This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 2. |
| m3 | This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 3. |
| A3 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper. |
| A4 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper. |
| A5 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper. |

A6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
B4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
B6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
ST	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
PC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcards.
COM10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 Envelope.
Monarc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc Envelope.
DL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL Envelope.
C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.
Pakai	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K paper.
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-B6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-ST	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
MSI-PC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.
MSI-COM10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 Envelope.
MSI-Monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc Envelope.
MSI-DL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL Envelope.

MSI-C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI-Pakai	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8K paper.
MSI-EC3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Choukei 3 Envelope.
MSI-LP	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with long paper.
MSI-MxNmm	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper. <i>M</i> (width) and <i>N</i> (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

[For DP240A]

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
A4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
A6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
EX	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Executive-size paper.
MO	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc Envelope.
COM10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 Envelope.
DL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL Envelope.
C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.
LP 210x900	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with long paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-

	size paper.
MSI-EX	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Executive-size paper (7.25x10.5").
MSI-COM10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 Envelope.
MSI-MO	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc Envelope.
MSI-DL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL Envelope.
MSI-C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI-LP210x900	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with long paper.
MxNmm	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper. M (width) and N (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).
MxNin	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with MxNin non-standard-size paper. M (width) and N (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

[For Mono2]

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
A3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
A4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
A6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
B4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
B6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
ST	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
EXE	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Executive-

	size paper (7.25x10.5").
PC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcards.
DPC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with pre-paid postcards.
EC3Y	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Choukei 3 Envelope.
EY4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Youkei 4 Envelope.
COM10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 Envelope.
Monarc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc Envelope.
DL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL Envelope.
C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.
C4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-B6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-ST	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
MSI-EXE	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Executive-size paper (7.25x10.5").
MSI-PC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.
MSI-DPC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with pre-paid postcards.
MSI-EC3Y	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Choukei 3 Envelope.
MSI-EY4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Youkei 4 Envelope.
MSI-COM10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 Envelope.
MSI-Monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc Envelope.
MSI-DL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL Envelope.

MSI-C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI-C4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI-MxNmm	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper. <i>M</i> (width) and <i>N</i> (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

For sizes that cannot be output, printing will be output to the paper from the default tray.

The following non-standard sizes are available for the respective models.

For Mono and MonoSP

Smallest: 86.1x148.2 mm, Largest: 304.8x508.0 mm

If a size not supported by the printer is specified, it will result in an error.

For DP240A

Smallest: 75.5x127.0 mm, Largest: 215.9x355.6 mm

For Mono2

Smallest: 76.2x98.4 mm, Largest: 304.8x508.0 mm

297x900 mm and 210x900 mm long paper will be taken as non-standard sizes.

AutoPT Paper will be fed from the tray loaded with the paper type specified in the [**M**=type] option.

See For information on sizes that can be output, refer to the printer manual.

[-Otray_output]

Specifies the output tray.

The parameters for selecting the output tray are as follows.

fd	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
fu	Outputs to the Face Up Tray.
mn	Outputs to bin <i>n</i> of the Mailbox. The value of <i>n</i> is any number from 1 to 10.
stn	Outputs <i>n</i> copies to the Sorter. The value of <i>n</i> is any number from 1 to 10.
fs	Auto-selects the Finisher.
fsn	Outputs to bin <i>n</i> of the Finisher. The value of <i>n</i> is any number from 1 to 3. (Not applicable to Document Centre 506/606/706 and Document Centre 235/285/405.)
fstm	Outputs to the Main Tray of the Finisher. (Only applicable to Document Centre 506/606/706.)

fst1 Outputs to Tray 1 of the Finisher. (Only applicable to Document Centre 235/285/405.)

Important Finisher Tray 1 refers to the lower tray for Document Centre 235/285/405.

fst2 Outputs to Tray 2 of the Finisher. (Only applicable to Document Centre 506/606/706 and Document Centre 235/285/405.)

Important Finisher Tray 2 refers to the upper tray for Document Centre 235/285/405.

of Outputs to the Offset Catch Tray.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be output to the default tray (Factory settings: Face Down Tray).

If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, it cannot be output to the Mailbox or the Sorter. If the Mailbox and Sorter are specified, it will output to the Face Down Tray. If the Finisher is specified, paper can be output to the specified tray but it will not be stapled or hole-punched.

For DP240A

The parameters for selecting the output tray are as follows.

ce Outputs to the Center Tray.

re Outputs to the Rear Tray.

of Outputs to the Offset Catch Tray.

[**-t**]

Prints using the Draft Mode. The resulting print will be lighter than a normal print. For models without the "Draft Mode" function, this option will be ignored.

[**-r**]

Rotates the image by 90 degrees and uses the paper in the landscape orientation.

[**-n**]

showpage will not be added. This option is used for merging files converted into PostScript language programs with files created by other applications.

[**-l** *left bottom*]

Specifies the output position. Printing will be done from the *left* (inch) and *bottom* (inch) of the page. The default is 0.25 inch for both *left* and *bottom*.

※ : For DP240A, the option is [**-l**=*left, bottom*].

[**-s** *width height*]

Specifies the output size. Printing will be done based on the *width* (inch) and *height* (inch).

※ : For DocuPrint 240A/340A, the option is [**-s**=*width, height*].

[**-s** *width*]

Specifies the *width* (inch) of the output size in inches. The height will be calculated automatically based on the width.

※ : For DP240A, the option is [**-s**=*width*].

[-E]

Select this checkbox to turn on the Image Enhancement feature. For models without the "Image Enhancement" function, this option will be ignored even if specified.

[**-Cpolicy**]

This option is not applicable for the supported printers.

[**-Nc=copies**]

Specifies the number of output copies (the value of *copies* must be a positive integer).

[**-C1**]

Specifies print output by set. It is valid only on models that support this function. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

[**-G4**]

Executes G4 Compression. If this option is specified, it functions like sunras2g4.

[**-Hd=position:format**]

Outputs the output user information as header/footer in specified locations.

position specifies the output position.

ul	Outputs to the top left of the paper.
ur	Outputs to the top right of the paper.
dl	Outputs to the bottom left of the paper.
dr	Outputs to the bottom right of the paper.

format specifies the output contents and sequence. This specification can be omitted.

If this option is omitted, "uh" will become the default.

u	User Name
h	Host Name
t	Date/Time

The output will be as follows if "tuh" is specified as the output contents.

2002/11/11 Fri 01:23:45 GMT User:username Host:hostname

Specify as follows.

To output user name and host name accordingly to the top right position:
(There is no need to specify the user name and host name as these are the default settings.)

-Hd=ur
-Hd=ur:uh
-Hd=dl:th

Important If the paper size is not specified, the header/footer will be output at the location in A4 paper by default. If the paper size is specified with the lp command, the output position of the header/footer will not be changed from the paper size position processed using sunras2ps2.

To specify the paper size, specify it when using the header/footer option.

The specification of the time zone (JST, GMT, etc.) for date/time can be done via the environment variable TZ.

[**-Hf***headerfont*]

Specifies the font for printing the header/footer. Single-byte alphanumeric European fonts and single-byte alphanumeric characters can be used. The default is Helvetica.

Note If an incorrect font is specified, the default European font of the printer will be used.

If the header/footer output option is not specified, the header/footer font specification will be ignored.

The following options are for Mono2.

[**Jo**=*type*]

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB	job	Offset Per Job
SE	set	Offset Per Set

[**M**=*type*]

Selects a paper type. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain
RC	recycled	Recycled
H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)
H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency

[**CO**=*type*...]

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
DT	detail	Fine
RH	rough	Rough

[**Pr**=*resolution*]

Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.

Stand	Standard
Fine	High Quality

◇ Example

Solaris

To output the displayed screen image to a file using the snapshot command and convert the file into a PostScript language program using the sunras2ps2 command, input as follows:

```
% sunras2ps2 file1.rs > file1.ps
```

To output the displayed screen image to a file using the snapshot command, convert the file into a PostScript language program using the sunras2ps2 command and output to a printer, input as follows:

```
% sunras2ps2 file1.rs | lp
```

The following options are for DP240A.

`[-Jjog]`

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

no	No offset
job	Offset Per Job
set	Offset Per Set

◆ Important

- ▶ If the same option is specified or if -s and -S are both specified, the one specified later will prevail.
- ▶ If the output size option (-s, -S) is not specified, scaling will be executed taking one pixel of the raster data as one pixel of the printer.
- ▶ If the output position option (-l left bottom) specifies a point beyond the printable area of the printer, data beyond the printable area will not be printed. The margins are set against the printable area for paper allowed by the printer. For more information, refer to the printer manual.

3.7 sunras2g4 (Solaris)

Important Not applicable for DP240A.

◇ Format

```
/usr/local/fxbin/sunras2g4 [-d | -D] [-Itray_input] [-Otray_output]
[-r] [-n] [-l left bottom] [-s width height] [-S width] [-t] [-E]
[-Cpolicy] [-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-Hd=position:format] [-Hfheaderfont]
[filename...]
```

```
/usr/local/fxbinSP/sunras2g4 [-d | -D] [-Itray_input]
[-Otray_output] [-r] [-n] [-l left bottom] [-s width height] [-S
width] [-t] [-E] [-Cpolicy] [-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-Hd=position:format]
[-Hfheaderfont] [filename...]
```

```
/usr/local/fxbin205/sunras2g4 [-d | -D] [-Itray_input]
[-Otray_output] [-r] [-n] [-l left bottom] [-s width height]
[-S width] [-t] [-E] [-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-Hd=position:format]
[-Hfheaderfont] [-Jo=type] [-M=type] [-Pr=resolution] [-CO=type...]
[filename...]
```

◇ Function

Reads SunRaster format data, converts into G4 output and writes to the standard output.

If *filename* is not specified, the standard input will be taken as the command input.

SunRaster format files with a pixel depth of 1, 8, 24 or 32 bits can be specified.

sunras2g4 takes *filename* as having been created in 72dpi and calculates the output size. Thus, to convert SunRaster format files created in other resolutions, specify the size option (-s, -S) explicitly for conversion.

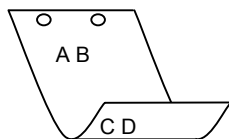
If the depth of the pixel is one bit, sunras2g4 will execute CCITT group 4 format compression. The size of the PostScript language program generated will be smaller than that by sunras2ps2.

sunras2g4 is the hard link file of sunras2ps2.

◇ Option

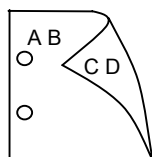
[-d]

Prints using the Flip on Short Edge feature. When Flip on Short Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge. This option is valid only for models with the 2 Sided Print feature. If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, 2 Sided Print will not be executed for DocuPrint 205/255/305.



[-D]

Prints with Flip on Long Edge. When Flip on Long Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge. This option is valid only for models with the 2 Sided Print feature. If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, 2 Sided Print will not be executed for DocuPrint 205/255/305.



[-Itray_input]

Specifies the paper tray.

A paper tray can be selected by directly specifying a tray or paper size.

If paper size is specified, the tray loaded with paper of the specified size will be searched and selected automatically.

[For Mono and MonoSP]

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

- | | |
|----|---|
| 1 | Feeds paper from Tray 1. |
| 2 | Feeds paper from Tray 2. |
| 3 | Feeds paper from Tray 3. |
| 4 | Feeds paper from Tray 4. |
| m1 | This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 1. |
| m2 | This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 2. |
| m3 | This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 3. |
| A3 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper. |
| A4 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper. |
| A5 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper. |
| A6 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper. |

B4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
B6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
ST	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
PC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcards.
COM10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 Envelope.
Monarc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc Envelope.
DL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL Envelope.
C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.
Pakai	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K paper.
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-B6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-ST	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
MSI-PC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.
MSI-COM10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 Envelope.
MSI-Monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc Envelope.
MSI-DL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL Envelope.
MSI-C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5

	Envelope.
MSI-Pakai	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8K paper.
MSI-EC3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Choukei 3 Envelope.
MSI-LP	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with long paper.
MSI-MxNmm	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper. <i>M</i> (width) and <i>N</i> (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

[For Mono2]

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
A3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
A4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
A6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
B4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
B6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
ST	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
EXE	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Executive-size paper (7.25x10.5").
PC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcards.
DPC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with pre-paid postcards.
EC3Y	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Choukei 3 Envelope.
EY4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Youkei 4 Envelope.
COM10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 Envelope.
Monarc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc Envelope.
DL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL Envelope.
C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.

C4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-B6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-ST	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
MSI-EXE	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Executive-size paper (7.25x10.5").
MSI-PC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.
MSI-DPC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with pre-paid postcards.
MSI-EC3Y	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Choukei 3 Envelope.
MSI-EY4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Youkei 4 Envelope.
MSI-COM10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 Envelope.
MSI-Monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc Envelope.
MSI-DL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL Envelope.
MSI-C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI-C4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI-MxNmm	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with <i>MxNmm</i> non-standard-size paper. <i>M</i> (width) and <i>N</i> (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

For sizes that cannot be output, printing will be output to the paper from the default tray.

The following non-standard sizes are available for the respective models.

For Mono and MonoSP

Smallest: 86.1x148.2 mm, Largest: 304.8x508.0 mm

If a size not supported by the printer is specified, it will result in an error.

For Mono2

Smallest: 76.2x98.4 mm, Largest: 304.8x508.0 mm

297x900 mm and 210x900 mm long paper will be taken as non-standard sizes.

AutoPT Paper will be fed from the tray loaded with the paper type specified in the **[M=type]** option.

See For information on sizes that cannot be output, refer to the printer manual.

[-Otray_output]

Specifies the output tray.

The parameters for selecting the output tray are as follows.

fd	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
fu	Outputs to the Face Up Tray.
mn	Outputs to bin n of the Mailbox. The value of n is any number from 1 to 10.
stn	Outputs n copies to the Sorter. The value of n is any number from 1 to 10.
fs	Selects the Finisher automatically.
fsn	Outputs to bin n of the Finisher. The value of n is any number from 1 to 3. (Not applicable to Document Centre 506/606/706 and Document Centre 235/285/405.)
fstm	Outputs to the Main Tray of the Finisher. (Only applicable to Document Centre 506/606/706.)
fst1	Outputs to Tray 1 of the Finisher. (Only applicable to Document Centre 235/285/405.) Important Finisher Tray 1 refers to the lower tray for Document Centre 235/285/405.
fst2	Outputs to Tray 2 of the Finisher. (Only applicable to Document Centre 506/606/706 and Document Centre 235/285/405.) Important Finisher Tray 2 refers to the upper tray for Document Centre 235/285/405.
of	Outputs to the Offset Catch Tray.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be output to the default tray (Factory settings: Face Down Tray).

If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, it cannot be output to the Mailbox or the Sorter. If the Mailbox and Sorter are specified, it will output to the Face Down Tray. If the Finisher is specified, paper can be output to the specified tray but it will not be stapled or hole-punched.

[**-t**]

Prints using the Draft Mode. The resulting print will be lighter than a normal print. For models without the "Draft Mode" function, this option will be ignored.

[**-r**]

Rotates the image by 90 degrees and uses the paper in the landscape orientation.

[**-n**]

showpage will not be added. This option is used for merging files converted into PostScript language programs with files created by other applications.

[**-l** *left bottom*]

Specifies the output position. Printing will be done from the *left* (inch) and *bottom* (inch) of the page. The default is 0.25 inch for both *left* and *bottom*.

[**-s** *width height*]

Specifies the output size. Printing will be done based on the *width* (inch) and *height* (inch).

[**-S** *width*]

Specifies the *width* (inch) of the output size in inches. The height will be calculated automatically based on the width.

[**-E**]

Select this checkbox to turn on the Image Enhancement feature. For models without the "Image Enhancement" function, this option will be ignored even if specified.

[**-Cpolicy**]

This option is not applicable for the supported printers.

[**-Nc=copies**]

Specifies the number of output copies (the value of *copies* must be a positive integer).

[**-Cl**]

Specifies print output by set. It is valid only on models that support this function. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

[**-Hd=position:format**]

Outputs the output user information as header/footer in specified locations.

position specifies the output position.

- ul Outputs to the top left of the paper.
- ur Outputs to the top right of the paper.
- dl Outputs to the bottom left of the paper.
- dr Outputs to the bottom right of the paper.

format specifies the output contents and sequence. This specification can be omitted.

If this option is omitted, "uh" will become the default.

u	User Name
h	Host Name
t	Date/Time

The output will be as follows if "tuh" is specified as the output contents.

2002/11/11 Fri 01:23:45 GMT User:username Host:hostname

Specify as follows.

To output user name and host name accordingly to the top right position:

(There is no need to specify the user name and host name as these are the default settings.)

-Hd=ur

-Hd=ur:uh

Important If the paper size is not specified, the header/footer will be output at the location in A4 paper by default. If the paper size is specified with the lp command, the output position of the header/footer will not be changed from the paper size position processed using sunras2g4.

To specify the paper size, specify it when using the header/footer option.

The specification of the time zone (JST, GMT, etc.) for date/time can be done via the environment variable TZ.

[**-Hf**headerfont]

Specifies the font for printing the header/footer. Single-byte alphanumeric European fonts and single-byte alphanumeric characters can be used. The default is Helvetica.

Note If an incorrect font is specified, the default European font of the printer will be used.

If the header/footer output option is not specified, the header/footer font specification will be ignored.

The following options are for Mono2.

[**Jo**=type]

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB	job	Offset Per Job
SE	set	Offset Per Set

[**M**=type]

Selects a paper type for the Manual Feed. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain
RC	recycled	Recycled
H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)
H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency

[**Co**=type...]

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two

values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
DT	detail	Fine
RH	rough	Rough

[**Pr**=resolution]

Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.

Stand	Standard
Fine	High Quality

◇ Example

Solaris

To output the displayed screen image to a file using the snapshot command and convert the file into a PostScript language program using the sunras2g4 command, input as follows:

```
% sunras2g4 file1.rs > file1.ps
```

To output the displayed screen image to a file using the snapshot command, convert the file into a PostScript language program using the sunras2g4 command and output to a printer, input as follows:

```
% sunras2g4 file1.rs | lp
```

◆ Important

- ▶ If the same option is specified or if -s and -S are both specified, the one specified later will prevail.
- ▶ If the output size option (-s, -S) is not specified, scaling will be executed taking one pixel of the raster data as one pixel of the printer.
- ▶ If the output position option (-l left bottom) specifies a point beyond the printable area of the printer, data beyond the printable area will not be printed. The margins are set against the printable area for paper allowed by the printer. For more information, refer to the printer manual.

3.8 tiff2ps2 (Solaris/Linux/HP-UX)

◇ Format

```
/usr/local/fxbin/tiff2ps2 [-d | -D] [-Itray_input] [-Otray_output]
[-r] [-n] [-l left bottom] [-s width height] [-S width] [-t] [-E]
[-Cpolicy] [-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-G4] [-Hd=position:format]
[-Hfheaderfont] [filename...]

/usr/local/fxbin205/tiff2ps2 [-d | -D] [-Itray_input]
[-Otray_output] [-r] [-n] [-l left bottom] [-s width height]
[-S width] [-t] [-E] [-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-G4] [-Hd=position:format]
[-Hfheaderfont] [-Jo=type] [-M=type] [-Pr=resolution] [-CO=type...]
[filename...]

/usr/local/fxbinSP/tiff2ps2 [-d | -D] [-Itray_input]
[-Otray_output] [-r] [-n] [-l left bottom] [-s width height]
[-S width] [-t] [-E] [-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-G4] [-Hd=position:format]
[-Hfheaderfont] [-Jo=type] [-M=type] [-Pr=resolution] [-CO=type...]
[filename...]

/usr/local/fxbin240A/tiff2ps2 [-d | -D] [-Itray_input]
[-Otray_output] [-t] [-r] [-n] [-l=left,bottom] [-s=width,height]
[-S=width] [-E] [-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-G4] [-Hd=position:format]
[-Hfheaderfont] [filename...]
```

◇ Function

Reads TIFF format data, converts into a PostScript language program and writes to the standard output. If *filename* is not specified, the standard input will be taken as the command input. TIFF format files with a pixel depth of 1, 4, 8, 24, and 32 bits can be specified.

The following four compression formats are supported.

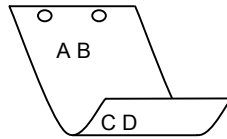
- Huffman compression (CCITT Group 3 transformed Huffman run length encoding)
 - Fax-CCITT3 compression (facsimile-compatible CCITT Group 3)
 - PackBits compression
 - No Compression
- ✕ TIFF files that contain multiple images in one file are not supported even in the case of the above-mentioned compression formats.

tiff2ps2 takes *filename* as having been created in 72dpi and calculates the output size. Thus, to convert TIFF format files created in other resolutions, specify the size option (-s, -S) explicitly for conversion.

◇ Option

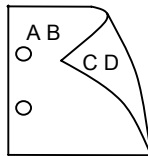
[-a]

Prints using the Flip on Short Edge feature. When Flip on Short Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge. This option is valid only for models with the 2 Sided Print feature. If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, 2 Sided Print will not be executed for DocuPrint 205/255/305.



[-D]

Prints using the Flip on Long Edge feature. When Flip on Long Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge. This option is valid only for models with the 2 Sided Print feature. If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, 2 Sided Print will not be executed for DocuPrint 205/255/305.



[-Itray_input]

Specifies the paper tray.

A paper tray can be selected by directly specifying a tray or paper size.

If paper size is specified, the tray loaded with paper of the specified size will be searched and selected automatically.

[For Mono and MonoSP]

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
m1	This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 1.
m2	This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 2.
m3	This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 3.
A3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
A4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
A6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
B4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.

B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
B6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
ST	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
PC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcards.
COM10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 Envelope.
Monarc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc Envelope.
DL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL Envelope.
C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.
Pakai	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K paper.
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-B6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-ST	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
MSI-PC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.
MSI-COM10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 Envelope.
MSI-Monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc Envelope.
MSI-DL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL Envelope.
MSI-C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.

MSI-Pakai	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8K paper.
MSI-EC3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Choukei 3 Envelope.
MSI-LP	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with long paper.
MSI-Mx/Nmm	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with <i>Mx/Nmm</i> non-standard-size paper. <i>M</i> (width) and <i>N</i> (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

[For DP240A]

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
A4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
A6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
EX	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Executive-size paper.
MO	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc Envelope.
COM10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 Envelope.
DL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL Envelope.
C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.
LP 210x900	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with long paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-EX	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Executive-

	size paper (7.25x10.5").
MSI-COM10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 Envelope.
MSI-MO	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc Envelope.
MSI-DL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL Envelope.
MSI-C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI-LP210x900	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with long paper.
MxNmm	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper. M (width) and N (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).
MxNin	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with MxNin non-standard-size paper. M (width) and N (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

[For Mono2]

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
A3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
A4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
A6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
B4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
B6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
ST	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
EXE	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Executive-size paper (7.25x10.5").
PC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcards.

DPC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with pre-paid postcards.
EC3Y	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Choukei 3 Envelope.
EY4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Youkei 4 Envelope.
COM10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 Envelope.
Monarc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc Envelope.
DL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL Envelope.
C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.
C4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-B6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-ST	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
MSI-EXE	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Executive-size paper (7.25x10.5").
MSI-PC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.
MSI-DPC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with pre-paid postcards.
MSI-EC3Y	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Choukei 3 Envelope.
MSI-EY4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Youkei 4 Envelope.
MSI-COM10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 Envelope.
MSI-Monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc Envelope.
MSI-DL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL Envelope.
MSI-C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.

MSI-C4 Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.

MSI-MxNmm Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper. *M* (width) and *N* (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

For sizes that cannot be output, printing will be output to the paper from the default tray.

The following non-standard sizes are available for the respective models.

For Mono and MonoSP

Smallest: 86.1x148.2 mm, Largest: 304.8x508.0 mm

If a size not supported by the printer is specified, it will result in an error.

For DP240A

Smallest: 75.5x127.0 mm, Largest: 215.9x355.6 mm

For Mono2

Smallest: 76.2x98.4 mm, Largest: 304.8x508.0 mm

297x900 mm and 210x900 mm long paper will be taken as non-standard sizes.

AutoPT Paper will be fed from the tray loaded with the paper type specified in the **[M=type]** option.

See For information on sizes that cannot be output, refer to the printer manual.

[-Otray_output]

Specifies the output tray.

The parameters for selecting the output tray are as follows.

fd	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
fu	Outputs to the Face Up Tray.
mn	Outputs to bin <i>n</i> of the Mailbox. The value of <i>n</i> is any number from 1 to 10.
stn	Outputs <i>n</i> copies to the Sorter. The value of <i>n</i> is any number from 1 to 10.
fs	Selects the Finisher automatically.
fsn	Outputs to bin <i>n</i> of the Finisher. The value of <i>n</i> is any number from 1 to 3. (Not applicable to Document Centre 506/606/706 and Document Centre 235/285/405.)
fstm	Outputs to the Main Tray of the Finisher. (Only applicable to Document Centre 506/606/706.)
fst1	Outputs to Tray 1 of the Finisher. (Only applicable to Document Centre 235/285/405.)

Important Finisher Tray 1 refers to the lower tray for Document Centre 235/285/405.

fst2 Outputs to Tray 2 of the Finisher. (Only applicable to Document Centre 506/606/706 and Document Centre 235/285/405.)

Important Finisher Tray 2 refers to the upper tray for Document Centre 235/285/405.

of Outputs to the Offset Catch Tray.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, the default tray will be selected (Factory settings: Face Down Tray).

If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, it cannot be output to the Mailbox or the Sorter. If the Mailbox and Sorter are specified, it will output to the Face Down Tray. If the Finisher is specified, paper can be output to the specified tray but it will not be stapled or hole-punched.

For DP240A

The parameters for selecting the output tray are as follows.

ce Outputs to the Center Tray.

re Outputs to the Rear Tray.

of Outputs to the Offset Catch Tray.

[**-t**]

Prints using the Draft Mode. The resulting print will be lighter than a normal print. For models without the "Draft Mode" function, this option will be ignored.

[**-r**]

Rotates the image by 90 degrees and uses the paper in the landscape orientation.

[**-n**]

showpage will not be added. This option is used for merging files converted into PostScript language programs with files created by other applications.

[**-l** *left bottom*]

Specifies the output position. Printing will be done from the *left* (inch) and *bottom* (inch) of the page. The default is 0.25 inch for both *left* and *bottom*.

※ : For DocuPrint 240A/340A, the option is [**-l=left, bottom**].

[**-s** *width height*]

Specifies the output size. Printing will be done based on the *width* (inch) and *height* (inch).

※ : For DP240A, the option is [**-s=width, height**].

[**-s** *width*]

Specifies the *width* (inch) of the output size in inches. The height will be calculated automatically based on the width.

※ : For DP240A, the option is [**-s=width**].

[**-E**]

Select this checkbox to turn on the Image Enhancement feature. For models without the "Image Enhancement" function, this option will be ignored even if specified.

[**-Cpolicy**]

This option is not applicable for the supported printers.

[**-Nc=copies**]

Specifies the number of output copies (the value of *copies* must be a positive integer).

[**-c1**]

Specifies print output by set. It is valid only on models that support this function. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

[**-G4**]

Executes G4 Compression. When this option is on, it functions like tiff2g4.

[**-Hd=position:format**]

Outputs the output user information as header/footer in specified locations.

position specifies the output position.

ul Outputs to the top left of the paper.

ur Outputs to the top right of the paper.

dl Outputs to the bottom left of the paper.

dr Outputs to the bottom right of the paper.

format specifies the output contents and sequence. This specification can be omitted.

If this option is omitted, "uh" will become the default.

u User Name

h Host Name

t Date/Time

The output will be as follows if "tuh" is specified as the output contents.

2002/11/11 Fri 01:23:45 GMT User:username Host:hostname

Specify as follows.

To output user name and host name accordingly to the top right position:

(There is no need to specify the user name and host name as these are the default settings.)

-Hd=ur

-Hd=ur:uh

Important If the paper size is not specified, the header/footer will be output at the location in A4 paper by default. If the paper size is specified with the lp command, the output position of the header/footer will not be changed from the paper size position processed using tiff2ps2.

To specify the paper size, specify it when using the header/footer option.

The specification of the time zone (JST, GMT, etc.) for date/time can be done via the environment variable TZ.

[**-Hfheaderfont**]

Specifies the font for printing the header/footer. Single-byte alphanumeric European fonts and single-byte alphanumeric characters can be used. The default is Helvetica.

Note If an incorrect font is specified, the default European font of the printer will be used.

If the header/footer output option is not specified, the header/footer font specification will be ignored.

The following options are for Mono2.

[Jo=type]

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB	job	Offset Per Job
SE	set	Offset Per Set

[M=type]

Selects a paper type for the Manual Feed. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain
RC	recycled	Recycled
H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)
H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency

[CO=type...]

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
DT	detail	Fine
RH	rough	Rough

[Pr=resolution]

Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.

Stand	Standard
Fine	High Quality

The following options are for DP240A.

[-Jjog]

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

no	No offset
job	Offset Per Job
set	Offset Per Set

◇ **Example**Linux

To convert a TIFF image into a PostScript language program and output to a file, input as follows:

```
% tiff2ps2 file1.tiff > file1.ps
```

To output a TIFF image to a printer, input as follows:

```
% tiff2ps2 file1.tiff | lpr
```

Solaris/HP-UX

To convert a TIFF image into a PostScript language program and output to a file, input as follows:

```
% tiff2ps2 file1.tiff > file1.ps
```

To output a TIFF image to a printer, input as follows:

```
% tiff2ps2 file1.tiff | lp
```

◆ Important

- ▶ If the same option is specified or if -s and -S are both specified, the one specified later will prevail.
- ▶ If the output size option (-s, -S) is not specified, scaling will be executed taking one pixel of the raster data as one pixel of the printer.
- ▶ If the output position option (-l left bottom) specifies a point beyond the printable area of the printer, data beyond the printable area will not be printed. The margins are set against the printable area for paper allowed by the printer. For more information, refer to the printer manual.

3.9 tiff2g4 (Solaris/Linux/HP-UX)

Important Not applicable for DP240A.

◇ Format

```
/usr/local/fxbin/tiff2g4 [-d | -D] [-Itray_input] [-Otray_output]
[-r] [-n] [-l left bottom] [-s width height] [-S width] [-t] [-E]
[-Cpolicy] [-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-Hd=position:format] [-Hfheaderfont]
[filename...]
```

```
/usr/local/fxbinSP/tiff2g4 [-d | -D] [-Itray_input] [-Otray_output]
[-r] [-n] [-l left bottom] [-s width height] [-S width] [-t] [-E]
[-Cpolicy] [-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-Hd=position:format] [-Hfheaderfont]
[filename...]
```

```
/usr/local/fxbin205/tiff2g4 [-d | -D] [-Itray_input]
[-Otray_output] [-r] [-n] [-l left bottom] [-s width height] [-t]
[-E] [-Cpolicy] [-S width] [-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-Hd=position:format]
[-Hfheaderfont] [-Jo=type] [-M=type] [-Pr=resolution] [-CO=type...]
[filename...]
```

◇ Function

Reads TIFF format data, converts into G4 output and writes to the standard output. If *filename* is not specified, the standard input will be taken as the command input. TIFF format files with a pixel depth of 1, 4, 8, 24, and 32 bits can be specified.

The following four compression formats are supported.

- Huffman compression (CCITT Group 3 transformed Huffman run length encoding)
- Fax-CCITT3 compression (facsimile-compatible CCITT Group 3)
- PackBits compression
- No Compression
- ✕ TIFF files that contain multiple images in one file are not supported even in the case of the above-mentioned compression formats.

tiff2g4 takes *filename* as having been created in 72dpi and calculates the output size. Thus, to convert TIFF format files created in other resolutions, specify the size option (-s, -S) explicitly for conversion.

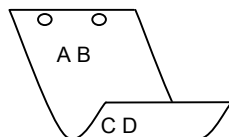
If the depth of the pixel is one bit, tiff2g4 will execute CCITT group 4 format compression. The size of the PostScript language program generated is smaller than that by tiff2ps2. tiff2g4 is the hard link file of tiff2ps2.

◇ Option

[-d]

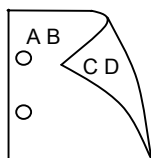
Prints using the Flip on Short Edge feature. When Flip on Short Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge.

This option is valid only for models with the 2 Sided Print feature. If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, 2 Sided Print will not be executed for DocuPrint 205/255/305.



[-D]

Prints with Flip on Long Edge. When Flip on Long Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge. This option is valid only for models with the 2 Sided Print feature. If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, 2 Sided Print will not be executed for DocuPrint 205/255/305.



[-Itray_input]

Specifies the paper tray.

A paper tray can be selected by directly specifying a tray or paper size.

If paper size is specified, the tray loaded with paper of the specified size will be searched and selected automatically.

[For Mono and MonoSP]

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

- | | |
|----|---|
| 1 | Feeds paper from Tray 1. |
| 2 | Feeds paper from Tray 2. |
| 3 | Feeds paper from Tray 3. |
| 4 | Feeds paper from Tray 4. |
| m1 | This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 1. |
| m2 | This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 2. |
| m3 | This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 3. |
| A3 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper. |
| A4 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper. |
| A5 | Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper. |

A6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
B4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
B6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
ST	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
PC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcards.
COM10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 Envelope.
Monarc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc Envelope.
DL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL Envelope.
C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.
Pakai	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K paper.
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-B6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-ST	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
MSI-PC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.
MSI-COM10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 Envelope.
MSI-Monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc Envelope.
MSI-DL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL Envelope.

MSI-C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI-Pakai	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8K paper.
MSI-EC3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Choukei 3 Envelope.
MSI-LP	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with long paper.
MSI-MxNmm	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with <i>MxNmm</i> non-standard-size paper. <i>M</i> (width) and <i>N</i> (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

[For Mono2]

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
A3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
A4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
A6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
B4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
B6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
ST	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
EXE	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Executive-size paper (7.25x10.5").
PC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcards.
DPC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with pre-paid postcards.
EC3Y	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Choukei 3 Envelope.
EY4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Youkei 4 Envelope.
COM10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 Envelope.
Monarc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc Envelope.
DL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL Envelope.

C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.
C4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-B6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-ST	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
MSI-EXE	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Executive-size paper (7.25x10.5").
MSI-PC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.
MSI-DPC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with pre-paid postcards.
MSI-EC3Y	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Choukei 3 Envelope.
MSI-EY4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Youkei 4 Envelope.
MSI-COM10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 Envelope.
MSI-Monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc Envelope.
MSI-DL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL Envelope.
MSI-C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI-C4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI-MxNmm	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with <i>MxNmm</i> non-standard-size paper. <i>M</i> (width) and <i>N</i> (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

For sizes that cannot be output, printing will be output to the paper from the default tray.

The following non-standard sizes are available for the respective models.

For Mono and MonoSP

Smallest: 86.1x148.2 mm, Largest: 304.8x508.0 mm

If a size not supported by the printer is specified, it will result in an error.

For Mono2

Smallest: 76.2x98.4 mm, Largest: 304.8x508.0 mm

297x900 mm and 210x900 mm long paper will be taken as non-standard sizes.

AutoPT Paper will be fed from the tray loaded with the paper type specified in the **[M=type]** option.

See For information on sizes that cannot be output, refer to the printer manual.

[-Otray_output]

Specifies the output tray.

The parameters for selecting the output tray are as follows.

fd	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
fu	Outputs to the Face Up Tray.
mn	Outputs to bin n of the Mailbox. The value of n is any number from 1 to 10.
stn	Outputs n copies to the Sorter. The value of n is any number from 1 to 10.
fs	Selects the Finisher automatically.
fsn	Outputs to bin n of the Finisher. The value of n is any number from 1 to 3. (Not applicable to Document Centre 506/606/706 and Document Centre 235/285/405.)
fstm	Outputs to the Main Tray of the Finisher. (Only applicable to Document Centre 506/606/706.)
fst1	Outputs to Tray 1 of the Finisher. (Only applicable to Document Centre 235/285/405.) Important Finisher Tray 1 refers to the lower tray for Document Centre 235/285/405.
fst2	Outputs to Tray 2 of the Finisher. (Only applicable to Document Centre 506/606/706 and Document Centre 235/285/405.) Important Finisher Tray 2 refers to the upper tray for Document Centre 235/285/405.
of	Outputs to the Offset Catch Tray.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, the default tray will be selected (Factory settings: Face Down Tray).

If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, it cannot be output to the Mailbox or the Sorter.

If the Mailbox and Sorter are specified, it will output to the Face Down Tray.

If the Finisher is specified, paper can be output to the specified tray but it will not be stapled or hole-punched.

[**-t**]

Prints using the Draft Mode. The resulting print will be lighter than a normal print. For models without the "Draft Mode" function, this option will be ignored.

[**-r**]

Rotates the image by 90 degrees and uses the paper in the landscape orientation.

[**-n**]

showpage will not be added. This option is used for merging files converted into PostScript language programs with files created by other applications.

[**-l** *left bottom*]

Specifies the output position. Printing will be done from the *left* (inch) and *bottom* (inch) of the page. The default is 0.25 inch for both *left* and *bottom*.

[**-s** *width height*]

Specifies the output size. Printing will be done based on the *width* (inch) and *height* (inch).

[**-S** *width*]

Specifies the *width* (inch) of the output size in inches. The height will be calculated automatically based on the width.

[**-E**]

Select this checkbox to turn on the Image Enhancement feature. For models without the "Image Enhancement" function, this option will be ignored even if specified.

[**-Cpolicy**]

This option is not applicable for the supported printers.

[**-Nc=copies**]

Specifies the number of output copies (the value of *copies* must be a positive integer).

[**-Cl**]

Specifies print output by set. It is valid only on models that support this function. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

[**-Hd=position:format**]

Outputs the output user information as header/footer in specified locations.

position specifies the output position.

- ul Outputs to the top left of the paper.
- ur Outputs to the top right of the paper.
- dl Outputs to the bottom left of the paper.
- dr Outputs to the bottom right of the paper.

format specifies the output contents and sequence. This specification can be omitted.

If this option is omitted, "uh" will become the default.

- u User Name

h Host Name

t Date/Time

The output will be as follows if "tuh" is specified as the output contents.

2002/11/11 Fri 01:23:45 GMT User:username Host:hostname

Specify as follows.

To output user name and host name accordingly to the top right position:

(There is no need to specify the user name and host name as these are the default settings.)

-Hd=ur

-Hd=ur:uh

Important If the paper size is not specified, the header/footer will be output at the location in A4 paper by default. If the paper size is specified with the lp command, the output position of the header/footer will not be changed from the paper size position processed using tiff2g4. To specify the paper size, specify it when using the header/footer option.

The specification of the time zone (JST, GMT, etc.) for date/time can be done via the environment variable TZ.

[**-Hf**headerfont]

Specifies the font for printing the header/footer. Single-byte alphanumeric European fonts and single-byte alphanumeric characters can be used. The default is Helvetica.

Note If an incorrect font is specified, the default European font of the printer will be used.

If the header/footer output option is not specified, the header/footer font specification will be ignored.

The following options are for Mono2.

[**Jo**=type]

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB	job	Offset Per Job
SE	set	Offset Per Set

[**M**=type]

Selects a paper type for the Manual Feed. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain
RC	recycled	Recycled
H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)
H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency

[**CO**=type...]

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
----	------	------

DT	detail	Fine
RH	rough	Rough

[**Pr**=resolution]

Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.

Stand	Standard
Fine	High Quality

◇ Example

Linux

To convert a TIFF image into G4 format and output to a file, input as follows:

```
% tiff2g4 file1.tiff > file1.ps
```

To output a TIFF image to a printer, input as follows:

```
% tiff2g4 file1.tiff | lpr
```

Solaris/HP-UX

To convert a TIFF image into a PostScript language program, input as follows:

```
% tiff2g4 file1.tiff > file1.ps
```

To convert a TIFF image into a PostScript language program and output to a printer, input as follows:

```
% tiff2g4 file1.tiff | lp
```

◆ Important

- ▶ If the same option is specified or if -s and -S are both specified, the one specified later will prevail.
- ▶ If the output size option (-s, -S) is not specified, scaling will be executed taking one pixel of the raster data as one pixel of the printer.
- ▶ If the output position option (-l left bottom) specifies a point beyond the printable area of the printer, data beyond the printable area will not be printed. The margins are set against the printable area for paper allowed by the printer. For more information, refer to the printer manual.

3.10 xwd2ps2 (Solaris/Linux/HP-UX)

◇ Format

```
/usr/local/fxbin/xwd2ps2 [-d | -D] [-Itray_input] [-Otray_output]
[-r] [-n] [-l left bottom] [-s width height] [-S width] [-t] [-E]
[-Cpolicy] [-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-G4] [-Hd=position:format]
[-Hfheaderfont] [filename...]

/usr/local/fxbin205/xwd2ps2 [-d | -D] [-Itray_input]
[-Otray_output] [-r] [-n] [-l left bottom] [-s width height]
[-S width] [-t] [-E] [-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-G4] [-Hd=position:format]
[-Hfheaderfont] [-Jo=type] [-M=type] [-Pr=resolution] [-CO=type...]
[filename...]

/usr/local/fxbinSP/xwd2ps2 [-d | -D] [-Itray_input] [-Otray_output]
[-r] [-n] [-l left bottom] [-s width height]
[-S width] [-t] [-E] [-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-G4] [-Hd=position:format]
[-Hfheaderfont] [-Jo=type] [-M=type] [-Pr=resolution] [-CO=type...]
[filename...]

/usr/local/fxbin240A/xwd2ps2 [-d | -D] [-Itray_input]
[-Otray_output] [-t] [-r] [-n] [-l=left,bottom] [-s=width,height]
[-S=width] [-E] [-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-G4] [-Hd=position:format]
[-Hfheaderfont] [filename...]
```

◇ Function

Reads XWD format data, converts into a PostScript language program and writes to the standard output. If *filename* is not specified, the standard input will be taken as the command input. XWD format files with a pixel depth of 1, 4, 8, 24 or 32 bits can be specified.

The following three compression formats are supported.

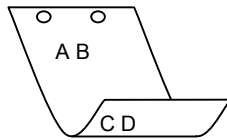
- The visual class is StaticGray and the pixel is 1-bit.
- The visual class is PseudoColor and the pixel is 4-bit or 8-bit.
The image format is Zpixmap.
- The visual class is TrueColor and the pixel is 24-bit.
The image format is Zpixmap.

xwd2ps2 takes *filename* as having been created in 72dpi and calculates the output size. Thus, to convert XWD format files created in other resolutions, specify the size option (-s, -S) explicitly for conversion.

◇ Option

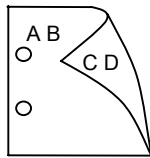
[-a]

Prints using the Flip on Short Edge feature. When Flip on Short Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge. This option is valid only for models with the 2 Sided Print feature. If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, 2 Sided Print will not be executed for DocuPrint 205/255/305.



[-D]

Prints using the Flip on Long Edge feature. When Flip on Long Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge. This option is valid only for models with the 2 Sided Print feature. If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, 2 Sided Print will not be executed for DocuPrint 205/255/305.



[-Itray_input]

Specifies the paper tray.

A paper tray can be selected by directly specifying a tray or paper size.

If paper size is specified, the tray loaded with paper of the specified size will be searched and selected automatically.

[For Mono and MonoSP]

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
m1	This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 1.
m2	This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 2.
m3	This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 3.
A3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
A4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
A6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
B4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.

B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
B6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
ST	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
PC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcards.
COM10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 Envelope.
Monarc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc Envelope.
DL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL Envelope.
C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.
Pakai	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K paper.
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-B6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-ST	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
MSI-PC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.
MSI-COM10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 Envelope.
MSI-Monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc Envelope.
MSI-DL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL Envelope.
MSI-C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.

MSI-Pakai	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8K paper.
MSI-EC3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Choukei 3 Envelope.
MSI-LP	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with long paper.
MSI- <i>MxNmm</i>	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with <i>MxNmm</i> non-standard-size paper. <i>M</i> (width) and <i>N</i> (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

[For DP240A]

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
A4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
A6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
EX	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Executive-size paper.
MO	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc Envelope.
COM10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 Envelope.
DL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL Envelope.
C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.
LP 210x900	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with long paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-EX	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Executive-

	size paper (7.25x10.5").
MSI-COM10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 Envelope.
MSI-MO	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc Envelope.
MSI-DL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL Envelope.
MSI-C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI-LP210x900	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with long paper.
MxNmm	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper. M (width) and N (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).
MxNin	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with MxNin non-standard-size paper. M (width) and N (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

[For Mono2]

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
A3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
A4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
A6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
B4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
B6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
ST	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
EXE	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Executive-size paper (7.25x10.5").
PC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcards.

DPC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with pre-paid postcards.
EC3Y	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Choukei 3 Envelope.
EY4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Youkei 4 Envelope.
COM10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 Envelope.
Monarc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc Envelope.
DL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL Envelope.
C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.
C4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-B6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-ST	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
MSI-EXE	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Executive-size paper (7.25x10.5").
MSI-PC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.
MSI-DPC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with pre-paid postcards.
MSI-EC3Y	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Choukei 3 Envelope.
MSI-EY4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Youkei 4 Envelope.
MSI-COM10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 Envelope.
MSI-Monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc Envelope.
MSI-DL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL Envelope.
MSI-C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.

MSI-C4 Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.

MSI-MxNmm Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper. *M* (width) and *N* (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

For sizes that cannot be output, printing will be output to the paper from the default tray.

The following non-standard sizes are available for the respective models.

For Mono and MonoSP

Smallest: 86.1x148.2 mm, Largest: 304.8x508.0 mm

If a size not supported by the printer is specified, it will result in an error.

For DP240A

Smallest: 75.5x127.0 mm, Largest: 215.9x355.6 mm

For Mono2

Smallest: 76.2x98.4 mm, Largest: 304.8x508.0 mm

297x900 mm and 210x900 mm long paper will be taken as non-standard sizes.

AutoPT Paper will be fed from the tray loaded with the paper type specified in the **[M=type]** option.

See For information on sizes that cannot be output, refer to the printer manual.

[-Otray_output]

Specifies the output tray.

The parameters for selecting the output tray are as follows.

fd	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
fu	Outputs to the Face Up Tray.
mn	Outputs to bin <i>n</i> of the Mailbox. The value of <i>n</i> is any number from 1 to 10.
stn	Outputs <i>n</i> copies to the Sorter. The value of <i>n</i> is any number from 1 to 10.
fs	Selects the Finisher automatically.
fsn	Outputs to bin <i>n</i> of the Finisher. The value of <i>n</i> is any number from 1 to 3. (Not applicable to Document Centre 506/606/706 and Document Centre 235/285/405.)
fstm	Outputs to the Main Tray of the Finisher. (Only applicable to Document Centre 506/606/706.)
fst1	Outputs to Tray 1 of the Finisher. (Only applicable to Document Centre 235/285/405.)

Important Finisher Tray 1 refers to the lower tray for Document Centre 235/285/405.

fst2 Outputs to Tray 2 of the Finisher. (Only applicable to Document Centre 506/606/706 and Document Centre 235/285/405.)

Important Finisher Tray 2 refers to the upper tray for Document Centre 235/285/405.

of Outputs to the Offset Catch Tray.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, the default tray will be selected (Factory settings: Face Down Tray).

If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, it cannot be output to the Mailbox or the Sorter. If the Mailbox and Sorter are specified, it will output to the Face Down Tray. If the Finisher is specified, paper can be output to the specified tray but it will not be stapled or hole-punched.

For DP240A

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

ce Outputs to the Center Tray.

re Outputs to the Rear Tray.

of Outputs to the Offset Catch Tray.

[**-t**]

Prints using the Draft Mode. The resulting print will be lighter than a normal print. For models without the "Draft Mode" function, this option will be ignored.

[**-r**]

Rotates the image by 90 degrees and uses the paper in the landscape orientation.

[**-n**]

showpage will not be added. This option is used for merging files converted into PostScript language programs with files created by other applications.

[**-l** *left bottom*]

Specifies the output position. Printing will be done from the *left* (inch) and *bottom* (inch) of the page. The default is 0.25 inch for both *left* and *bottom*.

※ : For DP240A, the option is [**-l=left,bottom**].

[**-s** *width height*]

Specifies the output size. Printing will be done based on the *width* (inch) and *height* (inch).

※ : For DP240A, the option is [**-s=width,height**].

[**-S** *width*]

Specifies the *width* (inch) of the output size in inches. The height will be calculated automatically based on the width.

※ : For DP240A, the option is [**-S=width**].

[**-E**]

Select this checkbox to turn on the Image Enhancement feature. For models without the "Image Enhancement" function, this option will be ignored even if specified.

[**-Cpolicy**]

This option is not applicable for the supported printers.

[**-Nc=copies**]

Specifies the number of output copies (the value of *copies* must be a positive integer).

[**-c1**]

Specifies print output by set. It is valid only on models that support this function. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

[**-G4**]

Executes G4 Compression. If this option is specified, it functions like xwd2g4.

[**-Hd=position:format**]

Outputs the output user information as header/footer in specified locations.

position specifies the output position.

ul	Outputs to the top left of the paper.
ur	Outputs to the top right of the paper.
dl	Outputs to the bottom left of the paper.
dr	Outputs to the bottom right of the paper.

format specifies the output contents and sequence. This specification can be omitted.

If this option is omitted, "uh" will become the default.

u	User Name
h	Host Name
t	Date/Time

The output will be as follows if "tuh" is specified as the output contents.

2002/11/11 Fri 01:23:45 GMT User:username Host:hostname

Specify as follows.

To output user name and host name accordingly to the top right position:

(There is no need to specify the user name and host name as these are the default settings.)

-Hd=ur

-Hd=ur:uh

Important If the paper size is not specified, the header/footer will be output at the location in A4 paper by default. If the paper size is specified with the lp command, the output position of the header/footer will not be changed from the paper size position processed using xwd2ps2.

To specify the paper size, specify it when using the header/footer option.

The specification of the time zone (JST, GMT, etc.) for date/time can be done via the environment variable TZ.

[**-Hfheaderfont**]

Specifies the font for printing the header/footer. Single-byte alphanumeric European fonts and single-byte alphanumeric characters can be used. The default is Helvetica.

Note If an incorrect font is specified, the default European font of the printer will be used.

If the header/footer output option is not specified, the header/footer font specification will be ignored.

The following options are for Mono2.

[**Jo**=*type*]

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB	job	Offset Per Job
SE	set	Offset Per Set

[**M**=*type*]

Selects a paper type for the Manual Feed. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain
RC	recycled	Recycled
H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)
H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency

[**CO**=*type*...]

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
DT	detail	Fine
RH	rough	Rough

[**Pr**=*resolution*]

Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.

Stand	Standard
Fine	High Quality

The following options are for DP240A.

[**-Jjog**]

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

no	No offset
job	Offset Per Job
set	Offset Per Set

◇ Example

Linux

To convert an XWD image into a PostScript language program and output to a file, input as follows:

```
% xwd2ps2 file1.xwd > file1.ps
```

To output an XWD image to a printer, input as follows:

```
% xwd2ps2 file1.xwd | lpr
```

Solaris/HP-UX

To convert an XWD image into a PostScript language program and output to a file, input as follows:

```
% xwd2ps2 file1.xwd > file1.ps
```

To output an XWD image to a printer, input as follows:

```
% xwd2ps2 file1.xwd | lp
```

◆ Important

- ▶ If the same option is specified or if -s and -S are both specified, the one specified later will prevail.
- ▶ If the output size option (-s, -S) is not specified, scaling will be executed taking one pixel of the raster data as one pixel of the printer.
- ▶ If the output position option (-l left bottom) specifies a point beyond the printable area of the printer, data beyond the printable area will not be printed. The margins are set against the printable area for paper allowed by the printer. For more information, refer to the printer manual.

3.11 xwd2g4 (Solaris/Linux/HP-UX)

Important Not applicable for DP240A.

◇ Format

```
/usr/local/fxbin/xwd2g4 [-d | -D] [-Itray_input] [-Otray_output]
[-r] [-n] [-l left bottom] [-s width height] [-S width] [-t] [-E]
[-Cpolicy] [-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-Hd=position:format] [-Hfheaderfont]
[filename...]
```

```
/usr/local/fxbinSP/xwd2g4 [-d | -D] [-Itray_input] [-Otray_output]
[-r] [-n] [-l left bottom] [-s width height] [-S width] [-t] [-E]
[-Cpolicy] [-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-Hd=position:format] [-Hfheaderfont]
[filename...]
```

```
/usr/local/fxbin205/xwd2g4 [-d | -D] [-Itray_input] [-Otray_output]
[-r] [-n] [-l left bottom] [-s width height] [-S width] [-t] [-E]
[-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-Hd=position:format] [-Hfheaderfont] [-Jo=type]
[-M=type] [-Pr=resolution] [-CO=type...] [filename...]
```

◇ Function

Reads XWD format data, converts into G4 output and writes to the standard output. If *filename* is not specified, the standard input will be taken as the command input. XWD format files with a pixel depth of 1, 4, 8, 24 or 32 bits can be specified.

The following three compression formats are supported.

- The visual class is StaticGray and the pixel is 1-bit.
- The visual class is PseudoColor and the pixel is 4-bit or 8-bit.

The image format is Zpixmap.

- The visual class is TrueColor and the pixel is 24-bit.

The image format is Zpixmap.

xwd2g4 takes *filename* as having been created in 72dpi and calculates the output size. Thus, to convert XWD format files created in other resolutions, specify the size option (-s, -S) explicitly for conversion.

If the depth of the pixel is one bit, xwd2g4 will execute CCITT group 4 format compression. The size of the PostScript language program generated is smaller than that by xwd2ps2.

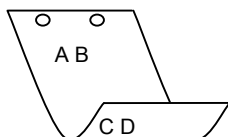
xwd2g4 is the hard link file of xwd2ps2.

◇ Option

[-d]

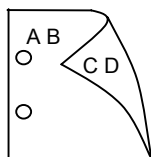
Prints using the Flip on Short Edge feature. When Flip on Short Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge.

This option is valid only for models with the 2 Sided Print feature. If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, 2 Sided Print will not be executed for DocuPrint 205/255/305.



[-D]

Prints with Flip on Long Edge. When Flip on Long Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge. This option is valid only for models with the 2 Sided Print feature. If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, 2 Sided Print will not be executed for DocuPrint 205/255/305.



[-Itray_input]

Specifies the paper tray.

A paper tray can be selected by directly specifying a tray or paper size.

If paper size is specified, the tray loaded with paper of the specified size will be searched and selected automatically.

[For Mono and MonoSP]

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
m1	This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 1.
m2	This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 2.
m3	This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 3.
A3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
A4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
A6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.

B4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
B6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
ST	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
PC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcards.
COM10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 Envelope.
Monarc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc Envelope.
DL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL Envelope.
C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.
Pakai	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K paper.
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-B6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-ST	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
MSI-PC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.
MSI-COM10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 Envelope.
MSI-Monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc Envelope.
MSI-DL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL Envelope.
MSI-C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5

	Envelope.
MSI-Pakai	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8K paper.
MSI-EC3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Choukei 3 Envelope.
MSI-LP	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with long paper.
MSI-MxNmm	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper. <i>M</i> (width) and <i>N</i> (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

[For Mono2]

The parameters for selecting a paper tray are as follows.

1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
A3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
A4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
A5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
A6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
B4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
B5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
B6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
LT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
LD	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
FL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
LG	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
ST	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
EXE	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Executive-size paper (7.25x10.5").
PC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcards.
DPC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with pre-paid postcards.
EC3Y	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Choukei 3 Envelope.
EY4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Youkei 4 Envelope.
COM10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 Envelope.
Monarc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc Envelope.
DL	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL Envelope.
C5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.

C4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI-A3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
MSI-A4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
MSI-A5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
MSI-A6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
MSI-B4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
MSI-B5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
MSI-B6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
MSI-LT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
MSI-LD	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
MSI-FL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
MSI-LG	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
MSI-ST	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
MSI-EXE	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Executive-size paper (7.25x10.5").
MSI-PC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.
MSI-DPC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with pre-paid postcards.
MSI-EC3Y	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Choukei 3 Envelope.
MSI-EY4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Youkei 4 Envelope.
MSI-COM10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 Envelope.
MSI-Monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc Envelope.
MSI-DL	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL Envelope.
MSI-C5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI-C4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.
MSI-MxNmm	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with <i>MxNmm</i> non-standard-size paper. <i>M</i> (width) and <i>N</i> (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

For sizes that cannot be output, printing will be output to the paper from the default tray.

The following non-standard sizes are available for the respective models.

For Mono and MonoSP

Smallest: 86.1x148.2 mm, Largest: 304.8x508.0 mm

If a size not supported by the printer is specified, it will result in an error.

For Mono2

Smallest: 76.2x98.4 mm, Largest: 304.8x508.0 mm

297x900 mm and 210x900 mm long paper will be taken as non-standard sizes.

AutoPT Paper will be fed from the tray loaded with the paper type specified in the **[M=type]** option.

See For information on sizes that cannot be output, refer to the printer manual.

[-Otray_output]

Specifies the output tray.

The parameters for selecting the output tray are as follows.

fd	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
fu	Outputs to the Face Up Tray.
mn	Outputs to bin n of the Mailbox. The value of n is any number from 1 to 10.
stn	Outputs n copies to the Sorter. The value of n is any number from 1 to 10.
fs	Selects the Finisher automatically.
fsn	Outputs to bin n of the Finisher. The value of n is any number from 1 to 3. (Not applicable to Document Centre 506/606/706 and Document Centre 235/285/405.)
fstm	Outputs to the Main Tray of the Finisher. (Only applicable to Document Centre 506/606/706.)
fst1	Outputs to Tray 1 of the Finisher. (Only applicable to Document Centre 235/285/405.) Important Finisher Tray 1 refers to the lower tray for Document Centre 235/285/405.
fst2	Outputs to Tray 2 of the Finisher. (Only applicable to Document Centre 506/606/706 and Document Centre 235/285/405.) Important Finisher Tray 2 refers to the upper tray for Document Centre 235/285/405.
of	Outputs to the Offset Catch Tray.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, the default tray will be selected (Factory settings: Face Down Tray).

If paper is fed from the Manual Feed, it cannot be output to the Mailbox or the Sorter. If the Mailbox and Sorter are specified, it will output to the Face Down Tray.

If the Finisher is specified, paper can be output to the specified tray but it will not be stapled or hole-punched.

[-t]

Prints using the Draft Mode. The resulting print will be lighter than a normal print. For models without the "Draft Mode" function, this option will be ignored.

[-r]

Rotates the image by 90 degrees and uses the paper in the landscape orientation.

[-n]

showpage will not be added. This option is used for merging files converted into PostScript language programs with files created by other applications.

[-l *left bottom*]

Specifies the output position. Printing will be done from the *left* (inch) and *bottom* (inch) of the page. The default is 0.25 inch for both *left* and *bottom*.

[-s *width height*]

Specifies the output size. Printing will be done based on the *width* (inch) and *height* (inch).

[-s *width*]

Specifies the *width* (inch) of the output size in inches. The height will be calculated automatically based on the width.

[-E]

Select this checkbox to turn on the Image Enhancement feature. For models without the "Image Enhancement" function, this option will be ignored even if specified.

[-C*policy*]

This option is not applicable for the supported printers.

[-N*c=copies*]

Specifies the number of output copies (the value of *copies* must be a positive integer).

[-C1]

Specifies print output by set. It is valid only on models that support this function. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

[-H*d=position:format*]

Outputs the output user information as header/footer in specified locations.

position specifies the output position.

ul Outputs to the top left of the paper.

ur Outputs to the top right of the paper.

dl Outputs to the bottom left of the paper.

dr Outputs to the bottom right of the paper.

format specifies the output contents and sequence. This specification can be omitted.

If this option is omitted, "uh" will become the default.

u User Name

h Host Name

t Date/Time

The output will be as follows if "tuh" is specified as the output contents.

2002/11/11 Fri 01:23:45 GMT User:username Host:hostname

Specify as follows.

To output user name and host name accordingly to the top right position:

(There is no need to specify the user name and host name as these are the default settings.)

-Hd=ur

-Hd=ur:uh

Important If the paper size is not specified, the header/footer will be output at the location in A4 paper by default. If the paper size is specified with the lp command, the output position of the header/footer will not be changed from the paper size position processed using xwd2g4.

To specify the paper size, specify it when using the header/footer option.

The specification of the time zone (JST, GMT, etc.) for date/time can be done via the environment variable TZ.

[**-Hf**headerfont]

Specifies the font for printing the header/footer. Single-byte alphanumeric European fonts and single-byte alphanumeric characters can be used. The default is Helvetica.

Note If an incorrect font is specified, the default European font of the printer will be used.

If the header/footer output option is not specified, the header/footer font specification will be ignored.

The following options are for Mono2.

[**Jo**=type]

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB	job	Offset Per Job
SE	set	Offset Per Set

[**M**=type]

Selects a paper type for the Manual Feed. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain
RC	recycled	Recycled
H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)
H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency

[**CO**=type...]

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
DT	detail	Fine
RH	rough	Rough

[**Pr**=*resolution*]

Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.

Stand	Standard
Fine	High Quality

◇ Example

Linux

To convert an XWD image into G4 format and output to a file, input as follows:

```
% xwd2g4 file1.xwd > file1.ps
```

To output an XWD image to a printer, input as follows:

```
% xwd2g4 file1.xwd | lpr
```

Solaris/HP-UX

To convert an XWD image into a PostScript language program, input as follows:

```
% xwd2g4 file1.xwd > file1.ps
```

To convert an XWD image into a PostScript language program and output to a printer, input as follows:

```
% xwd2g4 file1.xwd | lp
```

◆ Important

- ▶ If the same option is specified or if -s and -S are both specified, the one specified later will prevail.
- ▶ If the output size option (-s, -S) is not specified, scaling will be executed taking one pixel of the raster data as one pixel of the printer.
- ▶ If the output position option (-l left bottom) specifies a point beyond the printable area of the printer, data beyond the printable area will not be printed. The margins are set against the printable area for paper allowed by the printer. For more information, refer to the printer manual.

3.12 fxpif (Solaris/Linux)

◇ Format

Linux

```
/usr/lib/fxps/fxpif -w width -l length -i indent -n login -h
host accountfile
```

```
/usr/lib/fxps205/fxpif -w width -l length -i indent -n login
-h host accountfile
```

```
/usr/lib/fxps240A/fxpif -w width -l length -i indent -n login
-h host accountfile
```

Solaris

```
/usr/local/fxbin/fxpif [-d | -D] [-Itray_input]
[-Otray_output] [-C] [-t] [-E] [-Cpolicy] [-Nc=copies] [-Cl]
[-ps] [-JN] [-JU=username] accountfile
```

```
/usr/local/fxbinSP/fxpif [-d | -D] [-Itray_input]
[-Otray_output] [-C] [-t] [-E] [-Cpolicy] [-Nc=copies] [-Cl]
[-ps] [-JN] [-JU=username] accountfile
```

```
/usr/local/fxbin205/fxpif [-d | -D] [-Itray_input]
[-Otray_output] [-t] [-E] [-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-ps] [-Jo=type]
[-M=type] [-Pr=resolution] [-CO=type...] accountfile
```

```
/usr/local/fxbin240A/fxpif [-d | -D] [-Itray_input]
[-Otray_output] [-t] [-E] [-Nc=copies] [-Cl] [-ps] accountfile
```

◇ Function

If the first two characters of the input data are not "%!", the fxpif filter will convert it to the PostScript language program that can be output according to the paper size. If the first two characters of the input data are "%!", it will be considered the PostScript language program and no data conversion will be executed. The following control codes are interpreted for input data conversion.

LF	Line feed
FF	Form feed
TAB	8-column tab stop
BS	Backspace 1 character

fxpif is the hard link file of euc2ps2. (In case of DP240A, txt2ps2 is the hard link file of txt2ps2.)

Linux

In the case of Linux, the `fxpif` filter will be used as the if filter specified by `/etc/printcap`. The `lpd` daemon will specify the following command options and start up the `fxpif` filter.

```
fxpif -w width -l length -i indent -n login -h host accountfile
```

-w *width*

Sets the number of columns per line for the printer as the width. `lpd` will take the `pw` entry value of `/etc/printcap` as the argument and start up the if filter. However, the `fxpif` filter will calculate the number of columns per line automatically according to the paper size. Thus, the `pw` entry value of `/etc/printcap` will be ignored.

-l *length*

Sets the number of lines per page for the printer as the length. `lpd` will take the `pl` entry value of `/etc/printcap` as the argument and start up the if filter. However, the `fxpif` filter will calculate the number of lines per page automatically according to the paper size. Thus, the `pl` entry value of `/etc/printcap` will be ignored.

-i *indent*

Sets the horizontal tab with the indent columns (space). `lpd` will take the value set when `lpr` is specified as the argument and start up the `fxpif` filter.

-n *login*

Specifies the login name of the user who requested the print job. `lpd` will investigate the login user name automatically, set it as the argument and start up the `fxpif` filter.

-h *host*

Specifies the name of the host that requested the print job. `lpd` will investigate the host name automatically, set it as the argument and start up the `fxpif` filter.

accountfile

Specifies the account output file name. `lpd` will set the `af` entry value of `/etc/printcap` as the argument and start up the `fxpif` filter.

In addition, options that can be used by `euc2ps2/txt2ps2` can be specified in the `$HOME/.fxpsdefault`, `$HOME/.fxpsdefault205` and `$HOME/.fxpsdefault240A` file. With this option, detailed control can be achieved. However, if the first two characters of the input data are `"%!"`, only the following options of `euc2ps2/txt2ps2` will be valid.

(Only the `-ps` option will be valid even if the first two characters of the input data are not `"%!"`.)

See For more information on the parameters, refer to "3.5 euc2ps2".

[-d]

Prints using the 2 Sided Print with Flip on Short Edge feature.

[-D]

Prints using the 2 Sided Print with Flip on Long Edge feature.

[**-I***tray_input*]

Specifies the paper tray.

[**-O***tray_output*]

Specifies the output tray.

[**-t**]

Prints using the Draft Mode.

[**-E**]

Select this checkbox to turn on the Image Enhancement feature.

[**-C***policy*]

Specifies the Recovery Method. (Not applicable for the supported printers.)

[**-Nc=***copies*]

Specifies the number of output copies.

[**-C1**]

Specifies print output by set.

[**-ps**]

Processes the input file as a PostScript file.

The following options are for Mono2.

[**Jo=***type*]

Selects the Job Offset.

[**M=***type*]

Selects a paper type.

[**CO=***type...*]

Selects a halftone setting.

[**Pr=***resolution*]

Selects the Print Mode.

The following options are for Mono.

The following options add the XJCL header to the PostScript file to be output.

Important As the XJCL header is added, the output is no longer PostScript data. Do take note when printing via another server.

Important In addition, it cannot be used on printers that do not support XJCL. This can only be used when the XJCL switch of the printer is on.

[**-JN**]

The login user name and workstation host name are recorded as output user information in the print history of the printer. (Up to 30 characters)

[**-JU=***username*]

The user name and workstation host name specified in username are recorded as output user information in the print history of the printer. (Up to 30 characters)

If username is not specified, "UnknownUser" will be recorded.

The `fxpif` filter is registered with the system using the `lpfilter` command. After registration, the paper tray, output tray and 2 Sided Print specification can be done by using the `lp` command. To register, use the `lpfilter` command. The `fd` file that is provided with the `fxpif` filter will be specified as the argument.

To print on paper fed from Tray 2, using 2 Sided Print with binding and output to the Face Up Tray, input as follows:

```
lp -y tray2 -y face-up -y DuplexBook filename
```

In this case, specify the following options and start up the `fxpif` filter.

```
fxpif -I2 -Ofu -D
```

See For more information on the parameters, refer to "3.5 euc2ps2".

◇ File

This is the default command option setup file for individual users.

```
$HOME/.fxpsdefault
```

```
$HOME/.fxpsdefaultSP
```

```
$HOME/.fxpsdefault205
```

```
$HOME/.fxpsdefault240A
```

This is the default command option setup file.

```
/usr/lib/fxps/UserDefault/.fxpsdefault
```

```
/usr/lib/fxpsSP/UserDefault/.fxpsdefaultSP
```

```
/usr/lib/fxps205/UserDefault/.fxpsdefault205
```

```
/usr/lib/fxps240A/UserDefault/.fxpsdefault240A
```

This is the user home directory setup file (Linux only).

```
/usr/lib/fxps/UserDefault/.userhomedir
```

```
/usr/lib/fxps205/UserDefault/.userhomedir
```

```
/usr/lib/fxps240A/UserDefault/.userhomedir
```

◆ Important

- ▶ The `pw` and `pl` entries of `/etc/printcap` will be ignored by the `fxpif` filter. Thus, the `pw` and `pl` entries cannot be used to change the option for each paper size.
- ▶ For PostScript files with options such as paper specified, if the same option is specified, it will be ignored.
- ▶ Use the `-ps` option only when a PostScript file that contains no `"%!"` at the beginning of the file is used as a PostScript file. If a normal text file is input, it will not function correctly.

3.13 fxpvf (Linux)

◇ Format

```
/usr/lib/fxps/fxpvf  -x width -y length -n login -h host
accountfile
/usr/lib/fxps205/fxpvf  -x width -y length -n login -h host
accountfile
/usr/lib/fxps240A/fxpvf  -x width -y length -n login -h host
accountfile
```

◇ Function

The fxpvf filter takes XWD files (in the case of Linux) as having been created in 72dpi and converts them into PostScript language programs. To convert XWD files created in other resolutions, the size must be specified explicitly in the \$HOME/.fxpsdefault and \$HOME/.fxpsdefault205 file.

In the case of Linux, the fxpvf filter will be used as the vf filter specified by /etc/printcap. The lpd daemon will specify the following command options and start up the fxpvf filter.

```
fxpvf -x width -y length -n login -h host accountfile
```

In addition, options that can be used by sunras2ps2 can be specified in the \$HOME/.fxpsdefault, \$HOME/.fxpsdefault205 and \$HOME/.fxpsdefault240A file. With this option, detailed control can be achieved.

In the case of Solaris, the fxpvf filter is not used.

fxpvf is the hard link file of xwd2ps2 (in the case of Linux).

◇ Option

-x width

Sets the number of pixels in direction x for the printer as the width. lpd will take the px entry value of /etc/printcap as the argument and start up the vf filter. However, the fxpvf filter will calculate the number of pixels in direction x automatically according to the paper size. Thus, the px entry value of /etc/printcap will be ignored.

-y length

Sets the number of pixels in direction y for the printer as the length. lpd will take the py entry value of /etc/printcap as the argument and start up the vf filter. However, the fxpvf filter will calculate the number of pixels in direction y automatically according to the paper size. Thus, the py entry value of /etc/printcap will be ignored.

-n login

Specifies the login name of the user who requested the print job. lpd will investigate the login user name automatically, set it as the argument and start up the fxpvf filter.

-h *host*

Specifies the name of the host that requested the print job. lpd will investigate the host name automatically, set it as the argument and start up the fxpvf filter.

accountfile

Specifies the account output file name. lpd will set the af entry value of /etc/printcap as the argument and start up the fxpvf filter.

The option to be used with sunras2ps2 can be specified with the .fxpsdefault / .fxpsdefault205 / .fxpsdefault240A file. It is possible to get more detailed control by using this option. Please specify size option (-s,-S) when setting this option. In Solaris, the fxpvf filter is not used.

◇ File

This is the default command option setup file for individual users.

\$HOME/.fxpsdefault

\$HOME/.fxpsdefault205

\$HOME/.fxpsdefault240A

This is the default command option setup file.

/usr/lib/fxps/UserDefault/.fxpsdefault

/usr/lib/fxps205/UserDefault/.fxpsdefault205

/usr/lib/fxps240A/UserDefault/.fxpsdefault240A

This is the user home directory setup file (Linux only).

/usr/lib/fxps/UserDefault/.userhomedir

/usr/lib/fxps205/UserDefault/.userhomedir

/usr/lib/fxps240A/UserDefault/.userhomedir

◆ Important

- The px and py entries of /etc/printcap will be ignored by the fxpvf filter. Thus, the px and py entries cannot be used to change the option for each paper size.

3.14 fxpg4f (Linux)

◇ Format

```
/usr/lib/fxps/fxpg4f -x width -y length -n login -h host
accountfile
/usr/lib/fxps205/fxpg4f -x width -y length -n login -h host
accountfile
```

◇ Function

The fxpg4f filter takes XWD files (in the case of Linux) as having been created in 72dpi and converts them into G4 format. To convert XWD files created in other resolutions, the size must be specified explicitly in the \$HOME/.fxpsdefault and \$HOME/.fxpsdefault205 file.

In the case of Linux, the fxpg4f filter will be used as the vf filter specified by /etc/printcap. The lpd daemon will specify the following command options and start up the fxpg4f filter.

```
fxpg4f -x width -y length -n login -h host accountfile
```

In addition, options that can be used by xwd2g4 (in the case of Linux) can be specified in the \$HOME/.fxpsdefault and \$HOME/.fxpsdefault205 file. With this option, detailed control can be achieved.

In the case of Solaris, the fxpg4f filter is not used.

fxpg4f is the hard link file of xwd2ps2 (in the case of Linux).

◇ Option

-x *width*

Sets the number of pixels in direction x for the printer as the width. lpd will take the px entry value of /etc/printcap as the argument and start up the vf filter. However, the fxpg4f filter will calculate the number of pixels in direction x automatically according to the paper size. Thus, the px entry value of /etc/printcap will be ignored.

-y *length*

Sets the number of pixels in direction y for the printer as the length. lpd will take the py entry value of /etc/printcap as the argument and start up the vf filter. However, the fxpg4f filter will calculate the number of pixels in direction y automatically according to the paper size. Thus, the py entry value of /etc/printcap will be ignored.

-n *login*

Specifies the login name of the user who requested the print job. lpd will investigate the login user name automatically, set it as the argument and start up the fxpvf filter.

-h *host*

Specifies the name of the host that requested the print job. lpd will investigate the host name automatically, set it as the argument and start up the fxpvf filter.

accountfile

Specifies the account output file name. lpd will set the af entry value of /etc/printcap as the argument and start up the fxpvf filter.

The option to be used with sunras2g4 (for Solaris) or xwd2g4 (for Linux) can be specified with the .fxpsdefault / .fxpsdefault205 / .fxpsdefault240A file. It is possible to get more detailed control by using this option. Please specify size option (-s,-S) when setting this option.

In Solaris, the fxpg4f filter is not used.

◇ File

This is the default command option setup file for individual users.

\$HOME/.fxpsdefault

\$HOME/.fxpsdefault205

This is the default command option setup file.

/usr/lib/fxps/UserDefault/.fxpsdefault

/usr/lib/fxps205/UserDefault/.fxpsdefault205

This is the user home directory setup file (Linux only).

/usr/lib/fxps/UserDefault/.userhomedir

/usr/lib/fxps205/UserDefault/.userhomedir

◆ Important

- ▶ The px and py entries of /etc/printcap will be ignored by the fxpvf filter. Thus, the px and py entries cannot be used to change the option for each paper size.

3.15 fxpof (Linux)

◇ Format

```
/usr/lib/fxps/fxpof  -w width  -l length
/usr/lib/fxps205/fxpof  -w width  -l length
/usr/lib/fxps240A/fxpof  -w width  -l length
```

◇ Function

Uses the fxpof filter to output the banner sheet.

In the case of Linux, the fxpof filter will be used as the filter specified by the of entry of /etc/printcap. The lpd daemon will specify the following command options and start up the fxpof filter.

```
fxpof -w width -l length
```

◇ Option

-w width

Sets the number of columns per line for the printer as the width.

lpd will take the pw entry value of /etc/printcap as the argument and start up the of filter. However, the fxpof filter will calculate the number of columns per line automatically according to the paper size. Thus, the pw entry value of /etc/printcap will be ignored.

-l length

Sets the number of lines per page for the printer as the length.

lpd will take the pl entry value of /etc/printcap as the argument and start up the of filter. However, the fxpof filter will calculate the number of lines per page automatically according to the paper size. Thus, the pl entry value of /etc/printcap will be ignored.

In addition, the following options can be specified in the \$HOME/.fxpsdefault, \$HOME/.fxpsdefault205 and \$HOME/.fxpsdefault240A file.

```
[ -Itray_input ]    Specifies the paper tray.
[ -Otray_output ]   Specifies the output tray.
```

In the case of Solaris, the fxpof filter is not used.

◇ File

This is the default command option setup file for individual users.

`$HOME/.fxpsdefault`

`$HOME/.fxpsdefault205`

`$HOME/.fxpsdefault240A`

This is the default command option setup file.

`/usr/lib/fxps/UserDefault/.fxpsdefault`

`/usr/lib/fxps205/UserDefault/.fxpsdefault205`

`/usr/lib/fxps240A/UserDefault/.fxpsdefault240A`

This is the user home directory setup file (Linux only).

`/usr/lib/fxps/UserDefault/.userhomedir`

`/usr/lib/fxps205/UserDefault/.userhomedir`

`/usr/lib/fxps240A/UserDefault/.userhomedir`

◆ Important

- ▶ The px and py entries of /etc/printcap will be ignored by the fxpof filter. Thus, the px and py entries cannot be used to change the option for each paper size.

3.16 fxoption (Linux)

◇ Format

```
/usr/local/fxbin/fxoption [-d | -D] [-Itray_input] [-t] [-E]
[-Cpolicy] [-Otray_output] [-Nc=copies] [-C1] [-G4] [-ps] [-JN]
[-JU=username] [-Hd=position:format:page] [-Hfheaderfont]

/usr/local/fxbin205/fxoption [-d | -D] [-Itray_input] [-t] [-E]
[-Otray_output] [-Nc=copies] [-C1] [-G4] [-ps]
[-Hd=position:format:page] [-Hfheaderfont] [-Jo=type] [-M=type]
[-Pr=resolution] [-CO=type...]

/usr/local/fxbin240A/fxoption [-d | -D] [-Itray_input] [-t] [-E]
[-Otray_output] [-Nc=copies] [-C1] [-G4] [-ps]
[-Hd=position:format:page] [-Hfheaderfont]
```

◇ Function

In the case of Linux, when the fxpif, fxpvf, fxpg4f or fxpof filter is used as the spooler filter of the specified printer name, the fxoption command can be used. When the fxoption command is used, the options of the \$HOME/.fxpsdefault, \$HOME/.fxpsdefault205 and \$HOME/.fxpsdefault240A file can be changed, and the paper tray, output tray and 2 Sided Print feature can be specified.

In the case of Solaris, the fxoption command is not used.

◇ Option

See For more information on the parameters, refer to "3.5 euc2ps2".

```
[-d]
    Prints using the 2 Sided Print with Flip on Short Edge feature.

[-D]
    Prints using the 2 Sided Print with Flip on Long Edge feature.

[-Itray_input]
    Specifies the paper tray.

[-Otray_output]
    Specifies the output tray.

[-t]
    Prints using the Draft Mode.

[-E]
    Select this checkbox to turn on the Image Enhancement feature.

[-Cpolicy]
    Specifies the Recovery Method. (Not applicable for the supported printers.)

[-Nc=copies]
    Specifies the number of output copies.
```

[**-c1**]

Specifies print output by set.

[**-ps**]

Processes the input file as a PostScript file. (For fxpif)

[**-G4**]

Executes G4 Compression. (For fxpvf)

[**-Hd**=*position:format:page*]

Outputs the output user information as header/footer in specified locations.

[**-Hf***headerfont*]

Specifies the font for printing the header/footer.

The following options are for DocuPrint 205/255/305.

[**Jo**=*type*]

Selects the Job Offset.

[**M**=*type*]

Selects a paper type.

[**CO**=*type* . . .]

Selects a halftone setting.

[**Pr**=*resolution*]

Selects the Print Mode.

The following options add the XJCL header to the PostScript file to be output.

Important As the XJCL header is added, the output is no longer PostScript data. Do take note when printing via another server.

Important In addition, it cannot be used on printers that do not support XJCL. This can only be used when the JCL switch of the printer is on.

[**-JN**]

The login user name and workstation host name are recorded as output user information in the print history of the printer. (Up to 30 characters)

(This cannot be used in the case of fxpof.)

[**-JU**=*username*]

The user name and workstation host name specified in username are recorded as output user information in the print history of the printer. (Up to 30 characters)

If username is not specified, "UnknownUser" will be recorded.

(This cannot be used in the case of fxpof.)

◇ Example

To print on paper fed from a tray loaded with A4 paper of the default printer with the Flip on Short Edge and 2 Side Print features turned on, input as follows.

```
% fsoption -d -IA4
```

```
% lpr filename
```

◇ File

This is the default command option setup file for individual users.

```
$HOME/.fxpsdefault
```

```
$HOME/.fxpsdefault205
```

```
$HOME/.fxpsdefault240A
```

This is the user home directory setup file (Linux only).

```
/usr/lib/fxps/UserDefault/.userhomedir
```

```
/usr/lib/fxps205/UserDefault/.userhomedir
```

```
/usr/lib/fxps240A/UserDefault/.userhomedir
```

◆ Important

- ▶ If the default command option setup file of the individual user (\$HOME/.fxpsdefault, \$HOME/.fxpsdefault205 and \$HOME/.fxpsdefault240A) for the specified printer is not found, a default command option file will be created automatically.
- ▶ If the environment variable HOME is not set up, the fxoption command will not create or update the \$HOME/.fxpsdefault205 and \$HOME/.fxpsdefault240A file. To use the fxoption command, set up a home directory for the user in the environment variable HOME.
- ▶ In the case of Linux, the setup file that displays the home directory of the user is required when each user uses the default command option setup file (\$HOME/.fxpsdefault, \$HOME/.fxpsdefault205 and \$HOME/.fxpsdefault240A).
- ▶ If there are pending print jobs, the fxoption command cannot be used. If there are pending print jobs, wait till they have been processed before executing the fxoption command.
- ▶ In the case of filters where options are determined via filter names such as fxpif_A4, fxoption cannot be used to specify the paper tray, output tray, 2 Sided Print and so forth.

3.17 .userhomedir(Linux)

◇ Format

```
/usr/lib/fxps/UserDefault/.userhomedir  
/usr/lib/fxps205/UserDefault/.userhomedir  
/usr/lib/fxps240A/UserDefault/.userhomedir
```

◇ Function

In the case of Linux versions such as Red Hat Linux 7.1, the user home directory cannot be obtained by the usual method of using fxpif, fxpvf or fxpg4f. In this case, it is necessary to set up the home directory in the user home directory setup file when using the default command option setup file of each user set using fxoption.

The user home directory setup file is automatically written, created and set up during UNIX Driver installation. The setup contents include the names of all users and their home directory paths, set up automatically in the /etc/passwd file during UNIX Driver installation.

The user home directory setup file contains the

user home directory path.

Example

```
usera /home/usera  
userb /home/userb  
userc /home/userc
```

To set up users that require no setting or other directories, delete and modify the contents using an editor.

If a user is added after UNIX Driver installation, either re-install the UNIX Driver or modify the contents using an editor.

◇ File

This is the default command option setup file for individual users.

```
$HOME/.fxpsdefault  
$HOME/.fxpsdefault205  
$HOME/.fxpsdefault240A
```

This is the default command option setup file.

```
/usr/lib/fxps/UserDefault/.fxpsdefault  
/usr/lib/fxps205/UserDefault/.fxpsdefault205  
/usr/lib/fxps240A/UserDefault/.fxpsdefault240A
```

◆ Important

- ▶ If the home directory is not set up in the user home directory setup file (**/usr/lib/xfps/UserDefault/.userhomedir**), or if the setup directory does not contain the default command option file (**\$HOME/xfpsdefault**, **\$HOME/xfpsdefault205** and **\$HOME/xfpsdefault240A**) of the individual user, the options of the default command option setup file (**/usr/lib/xfps/UserDefault/xfpsdefault**, **/usr/lib/xfps205/UserDefault/xfpsdefault205** and **/usr/lib/xfps240A/UserDefault/xfpsdefault240A**) will be valid.

3.18 posteuc.fd (Solaris)

◇ Format

`/etc/lp/fd/posteuc.fd`

◇ Function

The `posteuc.fd` file is the filter description file of the `euc2ps2` filter that converts EUC coded text to PostScript language programs. The filter description file informs the Solaris print service software about the specification of the filter. It is registered with the system by the `lpfilter` command. After the filter is registered with the system, the filter can be started up by the `lp` command automatically.

The following items are defined by `posteuc.fd`.

```
Input types: simple
Output types: postscript
Printer types: DC250, DC451
Printers: any
Filter type: slow
Command: /user/lib/lp/postscript/posteuc
Options: LENGTH* = -l*
Options: WIDTH* = -w*
Options: MODES double = -2
Options: MODES font\=\(.*\) = -f\1
Options: MODES landscape = -r
Options: MODES outcolumn\=\(.*\) = -o\1
Options: MODES outline\=\(.*\) = -L\1
Options: MODES size\=\(.*\) = -s\1
Options: MODES margin\=\(.*\) = -mg\=\1
Options: MODES ps = -ps
```

`/usr/lib/lp/postscript/posteuc`, which is defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the `euc2ps2` command that is started up.

◇ Option

The `lpfilter` command is used to register `posuteuc.fd` with the print system. The following options can be specified by using the `lp` command.

Note Printing is carried out according to the length and width specified by the `lpadmin` command.

<code>-y double</code>	Prints in two stages.
<code>-y landscape</code>	Rotates the output by 90 degrees and uses the paper in the landscape orientation.
<code>-y size=<i>n</i></code>	Sets the font size to <i>n</i> point.
<code>-y outcolumn=<i>n</i></code>	Converts text into single-byte text and starts printing from the <i>n</i> th column.
<code>-y outline=<i>n</i></code>	Starts printing from the <i>n</i> th line.
<code>-y font=<i>font</i></code>	Specifies the font for printing single-byte alphanumeric characters.

- To specify a font, input the font name as-is after the `-y font=` option.

`%lp -y font=Courier-Oblique filename`

See For information on the fonts that can be used, refer to "Appendix B Available Fonts" or the printer manual.

<code>-y margin=<i>u:b:r:l</i></code>	Specifies the page margins in inches. The <i>u</i> (upper margin), <i>b</i> (bottom margin), <i>r</i> (right margin), and <i>l</i> (left margin) are positive real numbers (up to two decimal places). The default is 0.
<code>-y ps</code>	Processes the input file as a PostScript file. If the file does not begin with "%!", "%!" will be output to the first line. Regardless of whether the file contains "%!", other options of <code>posteuc.fd</code> will be ignored.

◇ Example

To print to a printer named "451PS" in 8-point with the 2-up printing feature turned on, input as follows:

`%lp -d 451PS -y double -y size=8 filename`

3.19 posteucSP.fd (Solaris)

◇ Format

`/etc/lp/fd/posteucSP.fd`

◇ Function

The `posteuc.fd` file is the filter description file of the `euc2ps2` filter that converts EUC coded text to PostScript language programs. The filter description file informs the Solaris print service software about the specification of the filter. It is registered with the system by the `lpfilter` command. After the filter is registered with the system, the filter can be started up by the `lp` command automatically.

The following items are defined by `posteucSP.fd`.

```
Input types: simple
Output types: postscript
Printer types: DC506, DC235
Printers: any
Filter type: slow
Command: /user/lib/lp/postscript/posteucSP
Options: LENGTH* = -l*
Options: WIDTH* = -w*
Options: MODES double = -2
Options: MODES font\=\(.*\) = -f\1
Options: MODES landscape = -r
Options: MODES outcolumn\=\(.*\) = -o\1
Options: MODES outline\=\(.*\) = -L\1
Options: MODES size\=\(.*\) = -s\1
Options: MODES margin\=\(.*\) = -mg\=\1
Options: MODES ps = -ps
```

`/usr/lib/lp/postscript/posteucSP`, which is defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the `euc2ps2` command that is started up.

◇ Option

The `lpfilter` command is used to register `posuteuc.fd` with the print system. The following options can be specified by using the `lp` command.

Note Printing is carried out according to the length and width specified by the `lpadmin` command.

<code>-y double</code>	Prints in two stages.
<code>-y landscape</code>	Rotates the output by 90 degrees and uses the paper in the landscape orientation.
<code>-y size=n</code>	Sets the font size to <i>n</i> point.
<code>-y outcolumn=n</code>	Converts text into single-byte text and starts printing from the <i>n</i> th column.

-y outline=*n* Starts printing from the *n*th line.

-y font=*font* Specifies the font for printing single-byte alphanumeric characters.

- To specify a font, input the font name as-is after the "-y font=" option.

%lp -y font=Courier-Oblique *filename*

See For information on the fonts that can be used, refer to "Appendix B Available Fonts" or the printer manual.

-y margin=*u:b:r:l* Specifies the page margins in inches. The *u* (upper margin), *b* (bottom margin), *r* (right margin), and *l* (left margin) are positive real numbers (up to two decimal places). The default is 0.

-y ps Processes the input file as a PostScript file. If the file does not begin with "%!", "%!" will be output to the first line. Regardless of whether the file contains "%!", other options of posteucSP.fd will be ignored.

◇ Example

To print to a printer named "506PS" in 8-point with the 2-up printing feature turned on, input as follows:

%lp -d 506PS -y double -y size=8 *filename*

3.20 posteuc205.fd (Solaris)

◇ Format

`/etc/lp/fd/posteuc205.fd`

◇ Function

The `posteuc205.fd` file is the filter description file of the `euc2ps2` filter that converts EUC coded text into PostScript language programs. The filter description file informs the Solaris print service software about the specification of the filter. It is registered with the system by the `lpfilter` command. After the filter is registered with the system, the filter can be started up by the `lp` command automatically.

The following items are defined by `posteuc205.fd`.

```
Input types: simple
Output types: postscript
Printer types: DP205
Printers: any
Filter type: slow
Command: /usr/lib/lp/postscript/posteuc205
Options: LENGTH* = -l*
Options: WIDTH* = -w*
Options: MODES double = -2
Options: MODES font\=(.*) = -f\1
Options: MODES landscape = -r
Options: MODES outcolumn\=(.*) = -o\1
Options: MODES outline\=(.*) = -L\1
Options: MODES size\=(.*) = -s\1
Options: MODES margin\=(.*) = -mg\=\1
Options: MODES ps = -ps
```

`/usr/lib/lp/postscript/posteuc205`, defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the `euc2ps2` command that is started up.

◇ Option

The `lpfilter` command is used to register `posuteuc.fd` with the print system. The following options can be specified by using the `lp` command.

Note Printing is carried out according to the length and width specified by the `lpadmin` command.

<code>-y double</code>	Prints in two stages.
<code>-y landscape</code>	Rotates the output by 90 degrees and uses the paper in the landscape orientation.
<code>-y size=n</code>	Sets the font size to <i>n</i> point.
<code>-y outcolumn=n</code>	Converts text into single-byte text and starts printing from the <i>n</i> th column.
<code>-y outline=n</code>	Starts printing from the <i>n</i> th line.

-y font=font Specifies the font for printing single-byte alphanumeric characters.

- To specify a font, input the font name as-is after the "-y font=" option.

%lp -y font=Courier-Oblique filename

See For information on the fonts that can be used, refer to "Appendix B Available Fonts" or the printer manual.

-y margin=u:b:r:l Specifies the page margins in inches. The u (upper margin), b (bottom margin), r (right margin), and l (left margin) are positive real numbers (up to two decimal places). The default is 0.

-y ps Processes the input file as a PostScript file. If the file does not begin with "%!", "%!" will be output to the first line. Regardless of whether the file contains "%!", other options of posteuc205.fd will be ignored.

◇ Example

To print to a printer named "205" in 8-point with the 2-up printing feature turned on, input as follows:

%lp -d 205 -y double -y size=8 filename

3.21 posttxt240A.fd (Solaris)

◇ Format

`/etc/lp/fd/posttxt240A.fd`

◇ Function

The `posttxt240A.fd` file is the filter description file of the `txt2ps2` filter that converts text into PostScript language programs. The filter description file informs the Solaris print service software about the specification of the filter. It is registered with the system by the `lpfilter` command. After the filter is registered with the system, the filter can be started up by the `lp` command automatically.

The following items are defined by `posttxt240A.fd`.

```
Input types: simple
Output types: postscript
Printer types: DocuPrint240A
Printers: any
Filter type: slow
Command: /usr/lib/lp/postscript/posttxt240A
Options: LENGTH* = -l*
Options: WIDTH* = -w*
Options: MODES double = -2
Options: MODES font\=(.*) = -f\1
Options: MODES landscape = -r
Options: MODES outcolumn\=(.*) = -o\1
Options: MODES outline\=(.*) = -L\1
Options: MODES size\=(.*) = -s\1
Options: MODES margin\=(.*) = -mg\=\1
Options: MODES ps = -ps
```

`/usr/lib/lp/postscript/posttxt240A`, defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the `txt2ps2` command that is started up.

◇ Option

The `lpfilter` command is used to register `posttxt240A.fd` with the print system. The following options can be specified by using the `lp` command.

Note Printing is carried out according to the length and width specified by the `lpadmin` command.

<code>-y double</code>	Prints in two stages.
<code>-y landscape</code>	Rotates the output by 90 degrees and uses the paper in the landscape orientation.
<code>-y size=n</code>	Sets the font size to <i>n</i> point.
<code>-y outcolumn=n</code>	Converts text into single-byte text and starts printing from the <i>n</i> th column.
<code>-y outline=n</code>	Starts printing from the <i>n</i> th line.

-y font=font Specifies the font for printing single-byte alphanumeric characters.

- To specify a font, input the font name as-is after the "-y font=" option.

%lp -y font=Courier-Oblique filename

See For information on the fonts that can be used, refer to "Appendix B Available Fonts" or the printer manual.

-y margin=u:b:r:l Specifies the page margins in inches. The u (upper margin), b (bottom margin), r (right margin), and l (left margin) are positive real numbers (up to two decimal places). The default is 0.

-y ps Processes the input file as a PostScript file. If the file does not begin with "%!", "%!" will be output to the first line. Regardless of whether the file contains "%!", other options of posttxt240A.fd will be ignored.

◇ Example

To print to a printer named "240A" in 8-point with the 2-up printing feature turned on, input as follows:

%lp -d 240A -y double -y size=8 filename

3.22 FXDC250.fd (Solaris)

◇ Format

`/etc/lp/fd/FXDC250.fd`

◇ Function

The FXDC250.fd file is the filter description file of the fxpif filter that adds the unique functions of Document Centre 250/350/400 to PostScript data. The filter description file informs the Solaris print service software about the specifications of the filter. It is registered with the system by the lpfilter command. After the filter is registered with the system, the filter can be started up by the lp command automatically.

The following items are defined by FXDC250.fd.

`/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps`, which is defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the fxpif command that is started up.

```
Input types: postscript
Output types: FXpostscript
Printer types: DC250
Printers: any
Filter type: slow
Command: /usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps
Options: MODES tray\([1-4]\) = -I\1
Options: MODES a\([345] \) = -IA\1
Options: MODES b\([45] \) = -IB\1
Options: MODES letter = -ILT
Options: MODES ledger = -ILD
Options: MODES folio = -IFL
Options: MODES legal = -ILG
Options: MODES pakai = -IPakai
Options: MODES msi-a\([345] \) = -IMSI-A\1
Options: MODES msi-b\([45] \) = -IMSI-B\1
Options: MODES msi-letter = -IMSI-LT
Options: MODES msi-ledger = -IMSI-LD
Options: MODES msi-folio = -IMSI-FL
Options: MODES msi-legal = -IMSI-LG
Options: MODES msi-pakai = -IMSI-Pakai
Options: MODES msi-postcard = -IMSI-PC
Options: MODES face-down = -Ofd
Options: MODES face-up = -Ofu
Options: MODES mailbox\([1-9] \) = -Om\1
Options: MODES mailbox10 = -Om10
Options: MODES finisher = -Ofs
Options: MODES finisher\([1-3] \) = -Ofs1
```



```
Options: MODES DuplexBook = -D
Options: MODES DuplexList = -d
Options: MODES nc\=\(.*\) = -Nc\=\1
Options: MODES cl = -Cl
Options: MODES ps = -ps
Options: MODES jn = -JN
Options: MODES ju\=\(.*\) = -JU\=\1
# compatibility options
Options: MODES legal1\([34] \) = -ILG1\1
Options: MODES msilegal1\([34] \) = -IMSI-LG1\1
Options: MODES msi-pc = -IMSI-PC
```

/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps, which is defined by the command, is a symbolic file.

In actual fact, it is the fxpif command that is started up.

Important This file can only be used on Document Centre 250/350/400.

◇ Option

If the FXDC250.fd file is registered with the print system using the lpfilter command, the paper tray, output tray and 2 Sided Print features can be selected for printing.

-y *tray_input*

The paper tray-related parameters that can be specified by the lp command are as follows.

tray1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
tray2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
tray3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
tray4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
a3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
a4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
a5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
b4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
b5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
letter	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper (8.5x11").
ledger	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
folio	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
legal	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Legal (14" Legal, 8.5x14").
pakai	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K paper.
msi-a3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
msi-a4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
msi-a5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
msi-b4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.

msi-b5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
msi-letter	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper (8.5x11").
msi-ledger	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
msi-folio	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
msi-legal	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Legal-size paper (14" Legal, 8.5x14").
msi-pakai	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8K paper.
msi-postcard	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray (Factory settings: Tray 1).

-y tray_output

The output tray-related parameters that can be specified by the lp command are as follows.

face-up	Outputs to the Face Up Tray.
face-down	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
mailbox <i>n</i>	Outputs to bin <i>n</i> of the Mailbox. The value of <i>n</i> is any number from 1 to 10.
finisher	Auto-selects the Finisher.
finisher <i>n</i>	Outputs to bin <i>n</i> of the Finisher. The value of <i>n</i> is any number from 1 to 3.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be output to the default tray (Factory settings: Face Down Tray).

If the Finisher is specified, paper can be output to the specified tray but it will not be stapled.

-y DuplexBook

Prints with Flip on Long Edge. When Flip on Long Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge. This option is valid only for models with the 2 Sided Print feature.

-y DuplexList

Prints with Flip on Short Edge. When Flip on Short Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge. This option is valid only for models with the 2 Sided Print feature.

-y toner_save

Prints using the Draft Mode.

-y nc=*n*

Specifies the number of output copies (the value of *copies* must be a positive integer). If this option is not specified, "1" will be selected.

-y cl

Specifies print output by set. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

-y ps

Processes the input file as a PostScript file. If the file does not begin with "%!", "%!" will be output to the first line. If the file contains "%!", this option will be ignored.

-y jn

Adds the XJCL header to the PostScript file to be output. The output user information can be recorded as printer print history via the XJCL header output. This can only be used when the JCL switch of the printer is on.

The login user name and workstation host name are recorded as print history in the printer.

-y ju=*username*

Adds the XJCL header to the PostScript file to be output. The output user information can be recorded as printer print history via the XJCL header output. This can only be used when the JCL switch of the printer is on.

The user name and workstation host name specified in *username* are recorded as print history in the printer. If *username* is not specified, "UnknownUser" will be recorded.

◇ Example

To print on paper loaded in the A3 tray of a printer named "250" with the Flip on Long Edge feature turned on, input as follows.

```
%lp -d 250 -y a3 -y DuplexBook filename
```

3.23 FXDC451.fd (Solaris)

◇ Format

`/etc/lp/fd/FXDC451.fd`

◇ Function

The FXDC451.fd file is the filter description file of the fxpif filter that adds the unique functions of Document Centre 451/551 to PostScript data. The filter description file informs the Solaris print service software about the specifications of the filter. It is registered with the system by the lpfilter command. After the filter is registered with the system, the filter can be started up by the lp command automatically.

The following items are defined by FXDC451.fd.

`/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps`, which is defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the fxpif command that is started up.

```
Input types: postscript
Output types: FXpostscript
Printer types: DC451
Printers: any
Filter type: slow
Command: /usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps
Options: MODES tray\([1-4]\) = -I\1
Options: MODES multitrays\([1-3] \) = -Im\1
Options: MODES a\([3-6]\) = -IA\1
Options: MODES b\([4-6]\) = -IB\1
Options: MODES letter = -ILT
Options: MODES ledger = -ILD
Options: MODES folio = -IFL
Options: MODES legal = -ILG
Options: MODES statement = -IST
Options: MODES pakai = -IPakai
Options: MODES postcard = -IPC
Options: MODES face-down = -Ofd
Options: MODES mailbox\([1-9] \) = -Om\1
Options: MODES mailbox10 = -Om10
Options: MODES finisher = -Ofs
Options: MODES DuplexBook = -D
Options: MODES DuplexList = -d
Options: MODES nc\=(.*) = -Nc\=\1
Options: MODES cl = -Cl
Options: MODES ps = -ps
Options: MODES jn = -JN
Options: MODES ju\=(.*) = -JU\=\1
```

/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps, which is defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the fxpif command that is started up.

Important This file can only be used on Document Centre 451/551.

◇ Option

If the FXDC451.fd file is registered with the print system using the lpfilter command, the paper tray, output tray and 2 Sided Print features can be selected for printing.

-y *tray_input*

The paper tray-related parameters that can be specified by the lp command are as follows.

tray1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
tray2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
tray3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
tray4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
multitray1	This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 1.
multitray2	This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 2.
multitray3	This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 3.
a3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
a4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
a5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
b4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
b5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
b6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
letter	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper (8.5x11").
ledger	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
folio	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
legal	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Legal (14" Legal, 8.5x14").
statement	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
pakai	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K paper.
postcard	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcards.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray (Factory settings: Tray 1).

-y *tray_output*

The output tray-related parameters that can be specified by the lp command are as follows.

face-down	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
-----------	--------------------------------

mailboxn Outputs to bin n of the Mailbox. The value of n is any number from 1 to 10.

finisher Auto-selects the Finisher.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be output to the default tray (Factory settings: Face Down Tray).

If the Finisher is specified, paper can be output to the specified tray but it will not be stapled.

-y DuplexBook

Prints with Flip on Long Edge. When Flip on Long Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge. This option is valid only for models with the 2 Sided Print feature.

-y DuplexList

Prints with Flip on Short Edge. When Flip on Short Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge. This option is valid only for models with the 2 Sided Print feature.

-y nc=n

Specifies the number of output copies (the value of *copies* must be a positive integer). If this option is not specified, "1" will be selected.

-y cl

Specifies print output by set. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

-y ps

Processes the input file as a PostScript file. If the file does not begin with "%!", "%!" will be output to the first line. If the file contains "%!", this option will be ignored.

-y jn

Adds the XJCL header to the PostScript file to be output. The output user information can be recorded as printer print history via the XJCL header output. This can only be used when the JCL switch of the printer is on.

The login user name and workstation host name are recorded as print history in the printer.

-y ju=username

Adds the XJCL header to the PostScript file to be output. The output user information can be recorded as printer print history via the XJCL header output. This can only be used when the JCL switch of the printer is on.

The user name and workstation host name specified in username are recorded as print history in the printer. If username is not specified, "UnknownUser" will be recorded.

◇ Example

To print on paper loaded in the A3 tray of a printer named "DC451" with the Flip on Long Edge feature turned on, input as follows.

```
%lp -d DC451 -y a3 -y DuplexBook filename
```

3.24 FXDC506.fd (Solaris)

◇ Format

`/etc/lp/fd/FXDC506.fd`

◇ Function

The FXDC506.fd file is the filter description file of the fxpif filter that adds the unique functions of Document Centre 506/606/706 to PostScript data. The filter description file informs the Solaris print service software about the specifications of the filter. It is registered with the system by the `lpfilter` command. After the filter is registered with the system, the filter can be started up by the `lp` command automatically.

The following items are defined by FXDC506.fd.

`/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxpsSP`, which is defined by the command, is a symbolic file.

In actual fact, it is the `fxpif` command that is started up.

```
Input types: postscript
Output types: FXpostscript
Printer types: DC506
Printers: any
Filter type: slow
Command: /usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxpsSP
Options: MODES tray\([1-4]\) = -I\1
Options: MODES multitrays\([1-3] \) = -Im\1
Options: MODES a\([3-6]\) = -IA\1
Options: MODES b\([4-6]\) = -IB\1
Options: MODES letter = -ILT
Options: MODES ledger = -ILD
Options: MODES folio = -IFL
Options: MODES legal = -ILG
Options: MODES statement = -IST
Options: MODES pakai = -IPakai
Options: MODES postcard = -IPC
Options: MODES msi-a\([3-6] \) = -IMSI-A\1
Options: MODES msi-b\([4-6] \) = -IMSI-B\1
Options: MODES msi-letter = -IMSI-LT
Options: MODES msi-ledger = -IMSI-LD
Options: MODES msi-folio = -IMSI-FL
Options: MODES msi-legal = -IMSI-LG
Options: MODES msi-statement = -IMSI-ST
Options: MODES msi-pakai = -IMSI-Pakai
Options: MODES msi-postcard = -IMSI-PC
Options: MODES face-down = -Ofd
Options: MODES finishertraymain = -Ofstm
```

```
Options: MODES finishertray2 = -Ofs2
Options: MODES DuplexBook = -D
Options: MODES DuplexList = -d
Options: MODES nc\=(.*\ ) = -Nc\=\1
Options: MODES cl = -Cl
Options: MODES ps = -ps
Options: MODES jn = -JN
Options: MODES ju\=(.*\ ) = -JU\=\1
Options: MODES kid\=(.*\ ) = -KId\=\1
Options: MODES kpwd\=(.*\ ) = -KPwd\=\1
Options: MODES kdoc\=(.*\ ) = -KDoc\=\1
```

/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps, which is defined by the command, is a symbolic file.

In actual fact, it is the fxpf command that is started up.

Important This file can only be used on Document Centre 506/606/706.

◇ Option

If the FXDC506.fd file is registered with the print system using the lpfilter command, the paper tray, output tray and 2 Sided Print features can be selected for printing.

-y *tray_input*

The paper tray-related parameters that can be specified by the lp command are as follows.

tray1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
tray2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
tray3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
tray4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
multitray1	This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 1.
multitray2	This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 2.
multitray3	This option allows the printer to feed paper from Multi-Tray 3.
a3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
a4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
a5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
a6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
b4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
b5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
b6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
letter	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper (8.5x11").
ledger	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
folio	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").

legal	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Legal (14" Legal, 8.5x14").
statement	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
pakai	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K paper.
postcard	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcards.
msi-a3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
msi-a4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
msi-a5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
msi-a6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
msi-b4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
msi-b5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
msi-b6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
msi-letter	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
msi-ledger	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
msi-folio	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
msi-legal	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
msi-statement	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
msi-pakai	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8K paper.
msi-postcard	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray (Factory settings: Tray 1).

-y *tray_output*

The output tray-related parameters that can be specified by the lp command are as follows.

face-down	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
finishertraymain	Outputs to the Main Tray of the Finisher.
finishertray2	Outputs to the Lower Tray of the Finisher.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be output to the default tray (Factory settings: Face Down Tray).

If the Finisher is specified, paper can be output to the specified tray but it will not be stapled.

-y **DuplexBook**

Prints with Flip on Long Edge. When Flip on Long Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge.

-y DuplexList

Prints with Flip on Short Edge. When Flip on Short Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge.

-y nc=*n*

Specifies the number of output copies (the value of *copies* must be a positive integer). If this option is not specified, "1" will be selected.

-y cl

Specifies print output by set. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

-y ps

Processes the input file as a PostScript file. If the file does not begin with "%!", "%!" will be output to the first line. If the file contains "%!", this option will be ignored.

-y jn

Adds the XJCL header to the PostScript file to be output. The output user information can be recorded as printer print history via the XJCL header output. This can only be used when the JCL switch of the printer is on.

The login user name and workstation host name are recorded as print history in the printer.

-y ju=*username*

Adds the XJCL header to the PostScript file to be output. The output user information can be recorded as printer print history via the XJCL header output. This can only be used when the JCL switch of the printer is on.

The user name and workstation host name specified in *username* are recorded as print history in the printer. If *username* is not specified, "UnknownUser" will be recorded.

-y kid=*userid*

Adds PJL USERNAME to the header of PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJL switch of the printer is on.

userid is a string of 1 to 24 byte-characters (21H-FFH). An empty string is not allowed.

Important To configure a secure print job, User ID must be specified. Password and DocName are optional.

-y kpwd=*password*

Adds the PJL HOLDKEY header to the PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJL switch of the printer is on.

password is a string of 0 to 4 ASCII digits ('0' – '9'). An empty string is not allowed. If the *password* option is absent, the driver will assume *password* to be a zero-length string so that a password will not be required when user selects the job at the printer control panel.

-y kdoc=*document*

Adds the PJL JOBNAME header to the PostScript file to be output. This can only

be used when the PJL switch of the printer is on.

This is the name of the secured print job that would be displayed on the printer control panel.

document is a string of 1 to 24 alphanumeric, '.', '_' or '-' characters. An empty string is not allowed.

If this option is absent, the driver will use "secureprint.ps" as the document name.

◇ Example

To print on paper loaded in the A3 tray of a printer named "DC506" with the Flip on Long Edge feature turned on, input as follows.

```
%lp -d DC506 -y a3 -y DuplexBook filename
```

3.25 FXDC235.fd (Solaris)

◇ Format

`/etc/lp/fd/FXDC235.fd`

◇ Function

The FXDC235.fd file is the filter description file of the fxpif filter that adds the unique functions of Document Centre 235/285/405 to PostScript data. The filter description file informs the Solaris print service software about the specifications of the filter. It is registered with the system by the lpfilter command. After the filter is registered with the system, the filter can be started up by the lp command automatically.

The following items are defined by FXDC235.fd.

`/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxpsSP`, which is defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the fxpif command that is started up.

```
Input types: postscript
Output types: FXpostscript
Printer types: DC235
Printers: any
Filter type: slow
Command: /usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxpsSP
Options: MODES tray\([1-4]\) = -I\1
Options: MODES a\([3-5]\) = -IA\1
Options: MODES b\([4-5]\) = -IB\1
Options: MODES letter = -ILT
Options: MODES folio = -IFL
Options: MODES legal = -ILG
Options: MODES ledger = -ILD
Options: MODES msi-a\([3-6] \) = -IMSI-A\1
Options: MODES msi-b\([4-6] \) = -IMSI-B\1
Options: MODES msi-letter = -IMSI-LT
Options: MODES msi-folio = -IMSI-FL
Options: MODES msi-legal = -IMSI-LG
Options: MODES msi-ledger = -IMSI-LD
Options: MODES msi-statement = -IMSI-ST
Options: MODES msi-postcard = -IMSI-PC
Options: MODES msi-ec3 = -IMSI-EC3
Options: MODES face-down = -Ofd
Options: MODES face-up = -Ofu
Options: MODES finishertray1 = -Ofst1
Options: MODES finishertray2 = -Ofst2
Options: MODES DuplexBook = -D
Options: MODES DuplexList = -d
```

```
Options: MODES nc\=\(.*\) = -Nc\=\1
Options: MODES toner_save = -t
Options: MODES cl = -Cl
Options: MODES ps = -ps
Options: MODES jn = -JN
Options: MODES ju\=\(.*\) = -JU\=\1
Options: MODES kid\=\(.*\) = -KId\=\1
Options: MODES kpwd\=\(.*\) = -KPwd\=\1
Options: MODES kdoc\=\(.*\) = -KDoc\=\1
```

/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps, which is defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the fxpif command that is started up.

Important This file can only be used on Document Centre 235/285/405.

◇ Option

If the FXDC235.fd file is registered with the print system using the lpfilter command, the paper tray, output tray and 2 Sided Print features can be selected for printing.

-y *tray_input*

The paper tray-related parameters that can be specified by the lp command are as follows.

tray1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
tray2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
tray3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
tray4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
a3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
a4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
a5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
b4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
b5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
letter	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper (8.5x11").
ledger	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
folio	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
legal	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Legal (14" Legal, 8.5x14").
msi-a3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
msi-a4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
msi-a5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
msi-a6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
msi-b4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
msi-b5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
msi-b6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.

msi-letter	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
msi-ledger	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
msi-folio	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
msi-legal	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
msi-statement	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
msi-postcard	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.
msi-ec3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Choukei 3 Envelope.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray (Factory settings: Tray 1).

-y *tray_output*

The output tray-related parameters that can be specified by the lp command are as follows.

face-down	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
face-up	Outputs to the Face Up Tray.
finishertray1	Outputs to the Lower Tray of the Finisher.
finishertray2	Outputs to the Upper Tray of the Finisher.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be output to the default tray (Factory settings: Face Down Tray).

If the Finisher is specified, paper can be output to the specified tray but it will not be stapled.

-y **DuplexBook**

Prints with Flip on Long Edge. When Flip on Long Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge.

-y **DuplexList**

Prints with Flip on Short Edge. When Flip on Short Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge.

-y **nc=n**

Specifies the number of output copies (the value of *copies* must be a positive integer). If this option is not specified, "1" will be selected.

-y **cl**

Specifies print output by set. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

-y **ps**

Processes the input file as a PostScript file. If the file does not begin with "%!", "%!" will be output to the first line. If the file contains "%!", this option will be

ignored.

-y jn

Adds the XJCL header to the PostScript file to be output. The output user information can be recorded as printer print history via the XJCL header output. This can only be used when the JCL switch of the printer is on.

The login user name and workstation host name are recorded as print history in the printer.

-y ju=username

Adds the XJCL header to the PostScript file to be output. The output user information can be recorded as printer print history via the XJCL header output. This can only be used when the JCL switch of the printer is on.

The user name and workstation host name specified in *username* are recorded as print history in the printer. If *username* is not specified, "UnknownUser" will be recorded.

-y kid=userid

Adds PJL USERNAME to the header of PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJL switch of the printer is on.

userid is a string of 1 to 24 byte-characters (21H-FFH). An empty string is not allowed.

Important To configure a secure print job, User ID must be specified. Password and DocName are optional.

-y kpwd=password

Adds the PJL HOLDKEY header to the PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJL switch of the printer is on.

password is a string of 0 to 4 ASCII digits ('0' – '9'). An empty string is not allowed. If the *password* option is absent, the driver will assume *password* to be a zero-length string so that a password will not be required when user selects the job at the printer control panel.

-y kdoc=document

Adds the PJL JOBNAME header to the PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJL switch of the printer is on.

This is the name of the secured print job that would be displayed on the printer control panel.

document is a string of 1 to 24 alphanumeric, '.', '_' or '-' characters. An empty string is not allowed.

If this option is absent, the driver will use "secureprint.ps" as the document name.

◇ Example

To print on paper loaded in the B5 tray of a printer named "DC235" with the Flip on Long Edge feature turned on, input as follows.

```
%lp -d DC235 -y b5 -y DuplexBook filename
```

3.26 FXDP205.fd (Solaris)

◇ Format

`/etc/lp/fd/FXDP205.fd`

◇ Function

The FXDP205.fd file is the filter description file of the fxpif filter that adds the unique functions of DocuPrint 205/255/305 to PostScript data. The filter description file informs the Solaris print service software about the specifications of the filter. It is registered with the system by the `lpfilter` command. After the filter is registered with the system, the filter can be started up by the `lp` command automatically.

The following items are defined by FXDP205.fd.

`/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205`, defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the `fxpif` command that is started up.

```
Input types: postscript
Output types: FXpostscript
Printer types: DocuPrint205
Printers: any
Filter type: slow
Command: /usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps
Options: MODES tray\([1-4]\) = -I\1
Options: MODES a\([345] \) = -IA\1
Options: MODES b\([45] \) = -IB\1
Options: MODES autopt = -IAutoPT
Options: MODES letter = -ILT
Options: MODES legal = -ILG
Options: MODES \(.*)mm = -I\1mm
Options: MODES msi-a\([345] \) = -IMSI-A\1
Options: MODES msi-b\([45] \) = -IMSI-B\1
Options: MODES msi-letter = -IMSI-LT
Options: MODES msi-ledger = -IMSI-LD
Options: MODES msi-statement = -IMSI-ST
Options: MODES msi-folio = -IMSI-FL
Options: MODES msi-legal = -IMSI-LG
Options: MODES msi-exe = -IMSI-EXE
Options: MODES msi-postcard = -IMSI-PC
Options: MODES msi-com10 = -ICOM10
Options: MODES msi-monarc = -IMonarc
Options: MODES msi-dl = -IDL
Options: MODES msi-C5 = -IC5
Options: MODES msi-ey4 = -IEY4
Options: MODES msi-\(.*)mm = -IMSI-\1mm
```



```
Options: MODES face-down = -Ofd
Options: MODES face-up = -Ofu
Options: MODES offset = -Oof
Options: MODES jo\=\(.*\) = -Jo\=\1
Options: MODES co\=\(.*\) = -Co\=\1
Options: MODES pr\=\(.*\) = -Pr\=\1
Options: MODES m\=\(.*\) = -M\=\1
Options: MODES DuplexBook = -D
Options: MODES DuplexList = -d
Options: MODES nc\=\(.*\) = -Nc\=\1
Options: MODES cl = -Cl
Options: MODES ps = -ps
Options: MODES kid\=\(.*\) = -KId\=\1
Options: MODES kpwd\=\(.*\) = -KPwd\=\1
Options: MODES kdoc\=\(.*\) = -KDoc\=\1
```

/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205, defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the fxpif command that is started up.

Important This file can only be used on DocuPrint 205/255/305.

◇ Option

If the FXDP205.fd file is registered with the print system using the lpfilter command, the paper tray and other features can be selected for printing.

-y *tray_input*

The paper tray-related parameters that can be specified by the lp command are as follows.

tray1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
tray2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
tray3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
tray4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
autopt	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with the paper specified.
a3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
a4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
a5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
b4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
b5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
letter	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
legal	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
msi-a3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
msi-a4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
msi-a5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
msi-b4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
msi-b5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.

msi-letter	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
msi-ledger	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
msi-st	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement-size paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
msi-folio	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
msi-legal	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
msi-exe	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Executive-size paper (7.25x10.5").
msi-postcard	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcards.
msi-com10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 Envelope.
msi-monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc Envelope.
msi-dl	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL Envelope.
msi-c5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 Envelope.
msi-ey4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Youkei 4 Envelope.
msi-MxNmm	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper. <i>M</i> (width) and <i>N</i> (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

The following non-standard sizes are available.

Smallest: 76.2x98.4 mm, Largest: 304.8x508.0 mm

297x900 mmf and 210x900 mm long paper will be taken as non-standard sizes.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

-y DuplexBook

Prints with Flip on Long Edge. When Flip on Long Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge. This option can be specified when specifying the Manual Feed.

-y DuplexList

Prints with Flip on Short Edge. When Flip on Short Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge. This option can be specified when specifying the Manual Feed.

-y toner_save

Prints using the Draft Mode. The resulting print will be lighter than a normal print.

-y nc=*n*

Specifies the number of output copies (the value of *copies* must be a positive integer). If this option is not specified, "1" will be selected.

-y cl

Specifies print output by set. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

-y ps

Processes the input file as a PostScript file. If the file does not begin with "%!", "%!" will be output to the first line. If the file contains "%!", this option will be ignored.

-y tray_output

The output tray-related parameters that can be specified by the lp command are as follows.

face-down	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
face-up	Outputs to the Face Up Tray.
offset	Outputs to the Offset Catch Tray.

-y jo=*type*

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB	job	Offset Per Job
SE	set	Offset Per Set

-y m=*type*

Selects a paper type for the Manual Feed. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain
RC	recycled	Recycled
H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)
H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency

-y co=*type*

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
DT	detail	Fine
RH	rough	Rough

-y pr=*resolution*

Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.

Stand	Standard
Fine	High Quality

-y kid=userid

Adds PJI USERNAME to the header of PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJI switch of the printer is on.

userid is a string of 1 to 24 byte-characters (21H-FFH). An empty string is not allowed.

Important To configure a secure print job, User ID must be specified. Password and DocName are optional.

-y kpwd=password

Adds the PJI HOLDKEY header to the PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJI switch of the printer is on.

password is a string of 0 to 4 ASCII digits ('0' – '9'). An empty string is not allowed. If the *password* option is absent, the driver will assume *password* to be a zero-length string so that a password will not be required when user selects the job at the printer control panel.

-y kdoc=document

Adds the PJI JOBNAME header to the PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJI switch of the printer is on.

This is the name of the secured print job that would be displayed on the printer control panel.

document is a string of 1 to 24 alphanumeric, '.', '_' or '-' characters. An empty string is not allowed.

If this option is absent, the driver will use "*secureprint.ps*" as the document name.

◇ Example

To print on A4 paper loaded in the Manual Feed of a printer named "DP205" with the Flip on Long Edge feature turned on, input as follows.

```
%lp -d DP205 -y msi-a4 filename
```


3.27 FXDP240A.fd (Solaris)

◇ Format

`/etc/lp/fd/FXDP240A.fd`

◇ Function

The FXDP240A.fd file is the filter description file of the fxpif filter that adds the unique functions of DocuPrint 240A/340A to PostScript data. The filter description file informs the Solaris print service software about the specifications of the filter. It is registered with the system by the `lpfilter` command. After the filter is registered with the system, the filter can be started up by the `lp` command automatically.

The following items are defined by FXDP240A.fd.

`/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps240A`, defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the `fxpif` command that is started up.

```
Input types: postscript
Output types: FXpostscript
Printer types: DocuPrint240A
Printers: any
Filter type: slow
Command: /usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps240A
Options: MODES DuplexBook = -D
Options: MODES DuplexList = -d
Options: MODES tray\([1-4]\) = -I\1
Options: MODES a\([4-6]\) = -IA\1
Options: MODES b5 = -IB5
Options: MODES letter = -ILT
Options: MODES folio = -IFL
Options: MODES legal = -ILG
Options: MODES executive = -IEX
Options: MODES monarch = -IMO
Options: MODES com10 = -ICOM10
Options: MODES dl = -IDL
Options: MODES c5 = -IC5
Options: MODES lp210x900 = -ILP210x900
Options: MODES \(.*\)mm = -I\1mm
Options: MODES \(.*\)in = -I\1in
Options: MODES center = -Oce
Options: MODES rear = -Ore
Options: MODES offset = -Oof
Options: MODES toner_save = -t
Options: MODES nc\= \(.*\) = -Nc\=\1
Options: MODES cl = -Cl
```

```
Options: MODES ps = -ps
Options: MODES ps = -ps
Options: MODES kid\=\(.*\) = -KId\=\1
Options: MODES kpwd\=\(.*\) = -KPwd\=\1
Options: MODES kdoc\=\(.*\) = -KDoc\=\1
```

/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps240A, defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the fxpif command that is started up.

Important This file can only be used on DocuPrint 240A/340A.

◇ Option

If the FXDP240A.fd file is registered with the print system using the lpfilter command, the paper tray and other features can be selected for printing.

-y *tray_input*

The paper tray-related parameters that can be specified by the lp command are as follows.

tray1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
tray2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
tray3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
tray4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
a4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
a5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
a6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
b5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
letter	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
folio	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio-size paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
legal	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal-size paper.
executive	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Executive-size paper (7.25x10.5").
monarch	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc Envelope.
com10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 Envelope.
dl	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL Envelope.
c5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 Envelope.
lp210x900	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with LP210x900 Envelope.
MxNmm	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper. <i>M</i> (width) and <i>N</i> (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).
MxMin	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with MxMin non-standard-size paper. <i>M</i> (width) and <i>N</i> (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

The following non-standard sizes are available.

Smallest: 75.5x215.9 mm, Largest: 127.0x355.6 mm

297x900 mmf and 210x900 mm long paper will be taken as non-standard sizes.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

-y DuplexBook

Prints with Flip on Long Edge. When Flip on Long Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge.

-y DuplexList

Prints with Flip on Short Edge. When Flip on Short Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge.

-y toner_save

Prints using the Draft Mode. The resulting print will be lighter than a normal print.

-y nc=*n*

Specifies the number of output copies (the value of *copies* must be a positive integer). If this option is not specified, "1" will be selected.

-y cl

Specifies print output by set. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

-y ps

Processes the input file as a PostScript file. If the file does not begin with "%!", "%!" will be output to the first line. If the file contains "%!", this option will be ignored.

-y tray_output

The output tray-related parameters that can be specified by the lp command are as follows.

center	Outputs to the Center Tray.
rear	Outputs to the Rear Tray.
offset	Outputs to the Offset Catch Tray.

-y kid=*userid*

Adds PJI USERNAME to the header of PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJI switch of the printer is on.

userid is a string of 1 to 24 byte-characters (21H-FFH). An empty string is not allowed.

Important To configure a secure print job, User ID must be specified. Password and DocName are optional.

-y kpwd=*password*

Adds the PJI HOLDKEY header to the PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJI switch of the printer is on.

password is a string of 0 to 4 ASCII digits ('0' – '9'). An empty string is not allowed. If the *password* option is absent, the driver will assume *password* to be a

zero-length string so that a password will not be required when user selects the job at the printer control panel.

-y kdoc=*document*

Adds the PJL JOBNAME header to the PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJL switch of the printer is on.

This is the name of the secured print job that would be displayed on the printer control panel.

document is a string of 1 to 24 alphanumeric, '.', '_' or '-' characters. An empty string is not allowed.

If this option is absent, the driver will use "*secureprint.ps*" as the document name.

◇ Example

To print on A4 paper named "DP240A" with the Flip on Long Edge feature turned on, input as follows.

```
%lp -d DP240A -y -a4 filename
```

3.28 FXDC186.fd (Solaris)

◇ Format

`/etc/lp/fd/FXDC186.fd`

◇ Function

The FXDC186.fd file is the filter description file of the fxpif filter that adds the unique functions of Document Centre 1085/1055/186/156 to PostScript data. The filter description file informs the Solaris print service software about the specifications of the filter. It is registered with the system by the `lpfilter` command. After the filter is registered with the system, the filter can be started up by the `lp` command automatically.

The following items are defined by FXDC186.fd.

`/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205`, defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the `fxpif` command that is started up.

```
Input types: postscript
Output types: FXpostscript
Printer types: DC186
Printers: any
Filter type: slow
Command: /usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205
Options: MODES tray\([1-4]\) = -I\1
Options: MODES a\([345] \) = -IA\1
Options: MODES b\([45] \) = -IB\1
Options: MODES autopt = -IAutoPT
Options: MODES letter = -ILT
Options: MODES ledger = -ILD
Options: MODES folio = -IFL
Options: MODES legal = -ILG
Options: MODES statement = -IST
Options: MODES exe = -IEXE
Options: MODES 4x6in = -I*
Options: MODES postcard = -IPC
Options: MODES ec3y = -IEC3Y
Options: MODES 8kaiT = -I*
Options: MODES 16kaiT = -I*
Options: MODES 8kaiC = -I*
Options: MODES 16kaiC = -I*
Options: MODES com10 = -ICOM10
Options: MODES monarc = -IMonarc
Options: MODES dl = -IDL
Options: MODES c5 = -IC5
Options: MODES \(.*\)mm = -I\1mm
```

```

Options: MODES msi-a\([345] \) = -IMSI-A\1
Options: MODES msi-b\([45] \) = -IMSI-B\1
Options: MODES msi-letter = -IMSI-LT
Options: MODES msi-ledger = -IMSI-LD
Options: MODES msi-statement = -IMSI-ST
Options: MODES msi-folio = -IMSI-FL
Options: MODES msi-legal = -IMSI-LG
Options: MODES msi-exe = -IMSI-EXE
Options: MODES msi-4x6in = -IMSI-4x6in
Options: MODES msi-postcard = -IMSI-PC
Options: MODES msi-ec3y = -IMSI-EC3Y
Options: MODES msi-8kaiT = -IMSI-8kaiT
Options: MODES msi-16kaiT = -IMSI-16kaiT
Options: MODES msi-8kaiC = -IMSI-8kaiC
Options: MODES msi-16kaiC = -IMSI-16kaiC
Options: MODES msi-com10 = -ICOM10
Options: MODES msi-monarc = -IMonarc
Options: MODES msi-dl = -IDL
Options: MODES msi-C5 = -IC5
Options: MODES msi-\(.*\)mm = -IMSI-\1mm
Options: MODES face-down = -Ofd
Options: MODES jo\=\(.*\) = -Jo\=\1
Options: MODES co\=\(.*\) = -CO\=\1
Options: MODES pr\=\(.*\) = -Pr\=\1
Options: MODES m\=\(.*\) = -M\=\1
Options: MODES DuplexBook = -D
Options: MODES DuplexList = -d
Options: MODES nc\=\(.*\) = -Nc\=\1
Options: MODES cl = -Cl
Options: MODES ps = -ps
Options: MODES kid\=\(.*\) = -KId\=\1
Options: MODES kpwd\=\(.*\) = -KPwd\=\1
Options: MODES kdoc\=\(.*\) = -KDoc\=\1

```

/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205, defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the fxpif command that is started up.

Important This file can only be used on Document Centre 1085/1055/186/156.

◇ Option

If the FXDC186.fd file is registered with the print system using the lpfilter command, the paper tray and other features can be selected for printing.

-y *tray_input*

The paper tray-related parameters that can be specified by the lp command are as follows.

tray1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
tray2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
tray3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
tray4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
autopt	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with the paper specified.
a3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
a4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
a5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
b4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
b5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
letter	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter paper.
ledger	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger paper.
folio	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio paper.
legal	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal paper.
statement	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Statement paper.
exe	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Executive paper.
4x6in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 4x6" paper.
postcard	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcard.
ec3y	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Choukei 3 envelope.
8kaiT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
16kaiT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
8kaiC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
16kaiC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
com10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 envelope.
monarc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc envelope.
dl	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL envelope.
c5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 envelope.
msi-a3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
msi-a4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
msi-a5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
msi-b4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
msi-b5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
msi-letter	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter paper.
msi-ledger	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
msi-statement	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").

msi-folio	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
msi-legal	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal paper.
msi-exe	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Executive paper (7.25x10.5").
msi-4x6in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 4x6" paper.
msi-postcard	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcard.
msi-ec3y	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Choukei 3 envelope.
msi-8kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
msi-16kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
msi-8kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
msi-16kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
msi-com10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 envelope.
msi-monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc envelope.
msi-dl	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL envelope.
msi-c5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 envelope.
msi-MxNmm	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper. <i>M</i> (width) and <i>N</i> (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

The following non-standard sizes are available.

Smallest: 76.2x98.4 mm, Largest: 304.8x508.0 mm

297x900 mmf and 210x900 mm long paper will be taken as non-standard sizes.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

-y DuplexBook

Prints with Flip on Long Edge. When Flip on Long Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge. This option can be specified when specifying the Manual Feed.

-y DuplexList

Prints with Flip on Short Edge. When Flip on Short Edge is specified, the print

direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge. This option can be specified when specifying the Manual Feed.

-y nc=*n*

Specifies the number of output copies (the value of *copies* must be a positive integer). If this option is not specified, "1" will be selected.

-y cl

Specifies print output by set. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

-y ps

Processes the input file as a PostScript file. If the file does not begin with "%!", "%!" will be output to the first line. If the file contains "%!", this option will be ignored.

-y tray_output

The output tray-related parameters that can be specified by the lp command are as follows.

face-down	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
-----------	--------------------------------

-y jo=*type*

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB	job	Offset Per Job
SE	set	Offset Per Set

-y m=*type*

Selects a paper type for the Manual Feed. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain
RC	recycled	Recycled
H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)
H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency

-y co=*type*

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
DT	detail	Fine
RH	rough	Rough

-y pr=*resolution*

Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.

Stand	Standard
Fine	High Quality

-y kid=*userid*

Adds PJL USERNAME to the header of PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJL switch of the printer is on.

userid is a string of 1 to 24 byte-characters (21H-FFH). An empty string is not allowed.

Important To configure a secure print job, User ID must be specified. Password and DocName are optional.

-y *kpwd=password*

Adds the PJL HOLDKEY header to the PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJL switch of the printer is on.

password is a string of 0 to 4 ASCII digits ('0' – '9'). An empty string is not allowed. If the *password* option is absent, the driver will assume *password* to be a zero-length string so that a password will not be required when user selects the job at the printer control panel.

-y *kdoc=document*

Adds the PJL JOBNAME header to the PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJL switch of the printer is on.

This is the name of the secured print job that would be displayed on the printer control panel.

document is a string of 1 to 24 alphanumeric, '.', '_' or '-' characters. An empty string is not allowed.

If this option is absent, the driver will use "*secureprint.ps*" as the document name.

◇ Example

To print on A4 paper loaded in the Manual Feed of a printer named "DC186" with the Flip on Long Edge feature turned on, input as follows.

```
%lp -d DC186 -y msi-a4 filename
```

3.29 FXDC286.fd (Solaris)

◇ Format

`/etc/lp/fd/FXDC286.fd`

◇ Function

The FXDC286.fd file is the filter description file of the fxpif filter that adds the unique functions of Document Centre 286/236 to PostScript data. The filter description file informs the Solaris print service software about the specifications of the filter. It is registered with the system by the lpfilter command. After the filter is registered with the system, the filter can be started up by the lp command automatically.

The following items are defined by FXDC286.fd.

`/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205`, defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the fxpif command that is started up.

```
Input types: postscript
Output types: FXpostscript
Printer types: DC286
Printers: any
Filter type: slow
Command: /usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205
Options: MODES tray\([1-4]\) = -I\1
Options: MODES a\([3456] \) = -IA\1
Options: MODES b\([456] \) = -IB\1
Options: MODES autopt = -IAutoPT
Options: MODES letter = -ILT
Options: MODES ledger = -ILD
Options: MODES folio = -IFL
Options: MODES legal = -ILG
Options: MODES statement = -IST
Options: MODES exe = -IEXE
Options: MODES 4x6in = -I*
Options: MODES 5x7in = -I*
Options: MODES 8x10in = -I*
Options: MODES 8.46x12.4in = -I*
Options: MODES 11x15in = -I*
Options: MODES postcard = -IPC
Options: MODES dpc = -IDPC
Options: MODES ec3y = -IEC3Y
Options: MODES 8kaiT = -I*
Options: MODES 16kaiT = -I*
Options: MODES 8kaiC = -I*
Options: MODES 16kaiC = -I*
```

```

Options: MODES com10 = -ICOM10
Options: MODES monarc = -IMonarc
Options: MODES dl = -IDL
Options: MODES c\([45]\) = -IC\1
Options: MODES ca4 = -ICA4
Options: MODES clt = -ICLT
Options: MODES \(.*\)mm = -I\1mm
Options: MODES msi-a\([45] \) = -IMSI-A\1
Options: MODES msi-b\([45] \) = -IMSI-B\1
Options: MODES msi-letter = -IMSI-LT
Options: MODES msi-ledger = -IMSI-LD
Options: MODES msi-statement = -IMSI-ST
Options: MODES msi-folio = -IMSI-FL
Options: MODES msi-legal = -IMSI-LG
Options: MODES msi-exe = -IMSI-EXE
Options: MODES msi-4x6in = -IMSI-4x6in
Options: MODES msi-5x7in = -IMSI-5x7in
Options: MODES msi-8x10in = -IMSI-8x10in
Options: MODES msi-8.46x12.4in = -IMSI-8.46x12.4in
Options: MODES msi-11x15in = -IMSI-11x15in
Options: MODES msi-postcard = -IMSI-PC
Options: MODES msi-dpc = -IMSI-DPC
Options: MODES msi-ec3y = -IMSI-EC3Y
Options: MODES msi-8kaiT = -IMSI-8kaiT
Options: MODES msi-16kaiT = -IMSI-16kaiT
Options: MODES msi-8kaiC = -IMSI-8kaiC
Options: MODES msi-16kaiC = -IMSI-16kaiC
Options: MODES msi-com10 = -ICOM10
Options: MODES msi-monarc = -IMonarc
Options: MODES msi-dl = -IDL
Options: MODES msi-c\([45]\) = -IMSI-C\1
Options: MODES msi-ca4 = -IMSI-CA4
Options: MODES msi-clt = -IMSI-CLT
Options: MODES msi-\(.*\)mm = -IMSI-\1mm
Options: MODES face-down = -Ofd
Options: MODES center2 = -Oce2
Options: MODES face-up = -Ofu2
Options: MODES finisher = -Ofs
Options: MODES jo\=\(.*\) = -Jo\=\1
Options: MODES co\=\(.*\) = -CO\=\1
Options: MODES pr\=\(.*\) = -Pr\=\1
Options: MODES m\=\(.*\) = -M\=\1
Options: MODES DuplexBook = -D

```

```
Options: MODES DuplexList = -d
Options: MODES nc\=(.*\) = -Nc\=\1
Options: MODES cl = -Cl
Options: MODES ps = -ps
Options: MODES kid\=(.*\) = -KId\=\1
Options: MODES kpwd\=(.*\) = -KPwd\=\1
Options: MODES kdoc\=(.*\) = -KDoc\=\1
```

/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205, defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the fxpif command that is started up.

Important This file can only be used on Document Centre 286/236.

◇ Option

If the FXDC286.fd file is registered with the print system using the lpfilter command, the paper tray and other features can be selected for printing.

-y *tray_input*

The paper tray-related parameters that can be specified by the lp command are as follows.

tray1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
tray2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
tray3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
tray4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
autopt	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with the paper specified.
a3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
a4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
a5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
a6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
b4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
b5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
b6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
letter	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter paper.
ledger	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger paper.
folio	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio paper.
legal	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal paper.
statement	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Statement paper.
exe	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Executive paper.
4x6in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 4x6" paper.
5x7in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 5x7" paper.
8x10in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8x10" paper.
8.46x12.4in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.46x12.4" paper.
11x15in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 11x15" paper.
postcard	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcard.
dpc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with pre-paid postcard.
ec3y	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Choukei 3

	envelope.
8kaiT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
16kaiT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
8kaiC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
16kaiC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
com10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 envelope.
monarc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc envelope.
dl	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL envelope.
c4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C4 envelope.
c5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 envelope.
ca4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 Cover paper.
clt	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
msi-a3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
msi-a4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
msi-a5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
msi-a6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
msi-b4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
msi-b5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
msi-b6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
msi-letter	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter paper.
msi-ledger	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
msi-statement	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
msi-folio	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
msi-legal	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal paper.
msi-exe	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Executive paper (7.25x10.5").
msi-4x6in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 4x6" paper.
msi-5x7in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 5x7" paper.
msi-8x10in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8x10" paper.
msi-8.46x12.4in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8.46x12.4"

	paper.
msi-11x15in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 11x15" paper.
msi-postcard	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcard.
msi-dpc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with pre-paid postcard.
msi-ec3y	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Choukei 3 envelope.
msi-8kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
msi-16kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
msi-8kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
msi-16kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
msi-com10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 envelope.
msi-monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc envelope.
msi-dl	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL envelope.
msi-c4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C4 envelope.
msi-c5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 envelope.
msi-ca4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 Cover paper.
msi-clt	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
msi-MxNmm	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper. <i>M</i> (width) and <i>N</i> (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

The following non-standard sizes are available.

Smallest: 76.2x98.4 mm, Largest: 304.8x508.0 mm

297x900 mmf and 210x900 mm long paper will be taken as non-standard sizes.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

-y DuplexBook

Prints with Flip on Long Edge. When Flip on Long Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge. This option can be

specified when specifying the Manual Feed.

-y DuplexList

Prints with Flip on Short Edge. When Flip on Short Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge. This option can be specified when specifying the Manual Feed.

-y nc=*n*

Specifies the number of output copies (the value of *copies* must be a positive integer). If this option is not specified, "1" will be selected.

-y cl

Specifies print output by set. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

-y ps

Processes the input file as a PostScript file. If the file does not begin with "%!", "%!" will be output to the first line. If the file contains "%!", this option will be ignored.

-y tray_output

The output tray-related parameters that can be specified by the lp command are as follows.

face-down	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
face-up	Outputs to the Face Up Tray.
centre2	Outputs to the Centre Output Tray.
finisher	Outputs to the Finisher.

-y jo=*type*

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB	job	Offset Per Job
SE	set	Offset Per Set

-y m=*type*

Selects a paper type for the Manual Feed. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain
RC	recycled	Recycled
H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)
H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency

-y co=*type*

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
DT	detail	Fine

- | | | |
|----|-------|-------|
| RH | rough | Rough |
|----|-------|-------|
- y pr=resolution**
Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.
- | | |
|-------|--------------|
| Stand | Standard |
| Fine | High Quality |
- y kid=userid**
Adds PJI USERNAME to the header of PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJI switch of the printer is on.
userid is a string of 1 to 24 byte-characters (21H-FFH). An empty string is not allowed.
Important To configure a secure print job, User ID must be specified. Password and DocName are optional.
- y kpwd=password**
Adds the PJI HOLDKEY header to the PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJI switch of the printer is on.
password is a string of 0 to 4 ASCII digits ('0' – '9'). An empty string is not allowed. If the *password* option is absent, the driver will assume *password* to be a zero-length string so that a password will not be required when user selects the job at the printer control panel.
- y kdoc=document**
Adds the PJI JOBNAME header to the PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJI switch of the printer is on.
This is the name of the secured print job that would be displayed on the printer control panel.
document is a string of 1 to 24 alphanumeric, '.', '_' or '-' characters. An empty string is not allowed.
If this option is absent, the driver will use "secureprint.ps" as the document name.

◇ Example

To print on A4 paper loaded in the Manual Feed of a printer named "DC286" with the Flip on Long Edge feature turned on, input as follows.

```
%lp -d DC286 -y msi-a4 filename
```

3.30 FXDC1100.fd (Solaris)

◇ Format

`/etc/lp/fd/FXDC1100.fd`

◇ Function

The FXDC1100.fd file is the filter description file of the fxpif filter that adds the unique functions of Document Centre 1100/900 to PostScript data. The filter description file informs the Solaris print service software about the specifications of the filter. It is registered with the system by the `lpfilter` command. After the filter is registered with the system, the filter can be started up by the `lp` command automatically.

The following items are defined by FXDC1100.fd.

`/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205`, defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the fxpif command that is started up.

```
Input types: postscript
Output types: FXpostscript
Printer types: DC1100
Printers: any
Filter type: slow
Command: /usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205
Options: MODES tray\([1-4567]\) = -I\1
Options: MODES a\([3456] \) = -IA\1
Options: MODES b\([456] \) = -IB\1
Options: MODES autopt = -IAutoPT
Options: MODES sra3 = -ISRA3
Options: MODES letter = -ILT
Options: MODES ledger = -ILD
Options: MODES folio = -IFL
Options: MODES legal = -ILG
Options: MODES 5x7in = -I*
Options: MODES 11x15in = -I*
Options: MODES 12x18in = -I*
Options: MODES 12.6x19.2in = -I*
Options: MODES 13x18in = -I*
Options: MODES 13x19in = -I*
Options: MODES postcard = -IPC
Options: MODES dpc = -IDPC
Options: MODES ec3 = -IEC3
Options: MODES ca4 = -ICA4
Options: MODES clt = -ICLT
Options: MODES \(.*)mm = -I\1mm
Options: MODES msi-a\([3456] \) = -IMSI-A\1
```

```
Options: MODES msi-b\[456] \) = -IMSI-B\1
Options: MODES msi-sra3 = -IMSI-SRA3
Options: MODES msi-letter = -IMSI-LT
Options: MODES msi-ledger = -IMSI-LD
Options: MODES msi-folio = -IMSI-FL
Options: MODES msi-legal = -IMSI-LG
Options: MODES msi-5x7in = -IMSI-5x7in
Options: MODES msi-11x15in = -IMSI-11x15in
Options: MODES msi-12x18in = -IMSI-12x18in
Options: MODES msi-12.6x19.2in = -IMSI-2.6x19.2in
Options: MODES msi-13x18in = -IMSI-13x18in
Options: MODES msi-13x19in = -IMSI-13x19in
Options: MODES msi-postcard = -IMSI-PC
Options: MODES msi-dpc = -IMSI-DPC
Options: MODES msi-ec3 = -IMSI-EC3
Options: MODES msi-ca4 = -IMSI-CA4
Options: MODES msi-clt = -IMSI-CLT
Options: MODES msi-\(.*\)mm = -IMSI-\1mm
Options: MODES face-down = -Ofd
Options: MODES finisher = -Ofs
Options: MODES jo\=\(.*\) = -Jo\=\1
Options: MODES co\=\(.*\) = -Co\=\1
Options: MODES pr\=\(.*\) = -Pr\=\1
Options: MODES m\=\(.*\) = -M\=\1
Options: MODES DuplexBook = -D
Options: MODES DuplexList = -d
Options: MODES nc\=\(.*\) = -Nc\=\1
Options: MODES cl = -Cl
Options: MODES ps = -ps
Options: MODES kid\=\(.*\) = -Kid\=\1
Options: MODES kpwd\=\(.*\) = -KPwd\=\1
Options: MODES kdoc\=\(.*\) = -KDoc\=\1
```

/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205, defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the fxpif command that is started up.

Important This file can only be used on Document Centre 1100/900.

◇ Option

If the FXDC1100.fd file is registered with the print system using the lpfilter command, the paper tray and other features can be selected for printing.

-y *tray_input*

The paper tray-related parameters that can be specified by the lp command are as follows.

tray1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
-------	--------------------------

tray2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
tray3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
tray4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
tray5	Feeds paper from Tray 5.
tray6	Feeds paper from Tray 6.
tray7	Feeds paper from Tray 7.
autopt	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with the paper specified.
a3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
a4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
a5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
a6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
b4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
b5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
b6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
sra3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with SRA3 paper.
letter	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter paper.
ledger	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger paper.
folio	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio paper.
legal	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal paper.
5x7in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 5x7"paper.
11x15in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 11x15" paper.
12x18in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 12x18" paper.
12.6x19.2in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 12.6x19.2" paper.
13x18in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 13x18" paper.
13x19in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 13x19" paper.
postcard	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcard.
dpc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with pre-paid postcard.
ec3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Choukei 3 envelope.
ca4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 Cover paper.
clt	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
msi-a3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
msi-a4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
msi-a5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
msi-a6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
msi-b4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
msi-b5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
msi-b6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
msi-sra3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with SRA3 paper.
msi-letter	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter paper.

msi-ledger	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
msi-statement	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
msi-folio	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
msi-legal	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal paper.
msi-5x7in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 5x17" paper.
msi-4x6in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 4x6" paper.
msi-5x7in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 5x7"-size paper.
msi-11x15in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 11x15" paper.
msi-12x18in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 12x18" paper.
msi-12.6x19.2in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 12.6x19.2" paper.
msi-13x18in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 13x18" paper.
msi-13x19in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 13x19" paper.
msi-postcard	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcard.
msi-dpc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with pre-paid postcard.
msi-ec3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Choukei 3 envelope.
msi-ca4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 Cover paper.
msi-clt	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.

msi-*MxNmm* Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with *MxNmm* non-standard-size paper. *M* (width) and *N* (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place). The following non-standard sizes are available.

Smallest: 76.2x98.4 mm, Largest: 304.8x508.0 mm

297x900 mmf and 210x900 mm long paper will be taken as non-standard sizes.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

-y DuplexBook

Prints with Flip on Long Edge. When Flip on Long Edge is specified for printing,

the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge. This option can be specified when specifying the Manual Feed.

-y DuplexList

Prints with Flip on Short Edge. When Flip on Short Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge. This option can be specified when specifying the Manual Feed.

-y nc=*n*

Specifies the number of output copies (the value of *copies* must be a positive integer). If this option is not specified, "1" will be selected.

-y cl

Specifies print output by set. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

-y ps

Processes the input file as a PostScript file. If the file does not begin with "%!", "%!" will be output to the first line. If the file contains "%!", this option will be ignored.

-y tray_output

The output tray-related parameters that can be specified by the lp command are as follows.

face-down	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
finisher	Outputs to the Finisher.

-y jo=*type*

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB	job	Offset Per Job
SE	set	Offset Per Set

-y m=*type*

Selects a paper type for the Manual Feed. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain
RC	recycled	Recycled
H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)
H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency

-y co=*type*

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
DT	detail	Fine

- | | | |
|----|-------|-------|
| RH | rough | Rough |
|----|-------|-------|
- y pr=resolution**
Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.
- | | |
|-------|--------------|
| Stand | Standard |
| Fine | High Quality |
- y kid=userid**
Adds PJI USERNAME to the header of PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJI switch of the printer is on.
userid is a string of 1 to 24 byte-characters (21H-FFH). An empty string is not allowed.
Important To configure a secure print job, User ID must be specified. Password and DocName are optional.
- y kpwd=password**
Adds the PJI HOLDKEY header to the PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJI switch of the printer is on.
password is a string of 0 to 4 ASCII digits ('0' – '9'). An empty string is not allowed. If the *password* option is absent, the driver will assume *password* to be a zero-length string so that a password will not be required when user selects the job at the printer control panel.
- y kdoc=document**
Adds the PJI JOBNAME header to the PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJI switch of the printer is on.
This is the name of the secured print job that would be displayed on the printer control panel.
document is a string of 1 to 24 alphanumeric, '.', '_' or '-' characters. An empty string is not allowed.
If this option is absent, the driver will use "secureprint.ps" as the document name.

◇ Example

To print on A4 paper loaded in the Manual Feed of a printer named "DC1100" with the Flip on Long Edge feature turned on, input as follows.

```
%lp -d DC1100 -y msi-a4 filename
```

3.31 FXDC336.fd (Solaris)

◇ Format

`/etc/lp/fd/FXDC336.fd`

◇ Function

The FXDC336.fd file is the filter description file of the fxpif filter that adds the unique functions of Document Centre 336 to PostScript data. The filter description file informs the Solaris print service software about the specifications of the filter. It is registered with the system by the `lpfilter` command. After the filter is registered with the system, the filter can be started up by the `lp` command automatically.

The following items are defined by FXDC336.fd.

`/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205`, defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the `fxpif` command that is started up.

```
Input types: postscript
Output types: FXpostscript
Printer types: DC336
Printers: any
Filter type: slow
Command: /usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205
Options: MODES tray\([1-46]\) = -I\1
Options: MODES a\([3456] \) = -IA\1
Options: MODES b\([456] \) = -IB\1
Options: MODES autopt = -IAutoPT
Options: MODES letter = -ILT
Options: MODES ledger = -ILD
Options: MODES folio = -IFL
Options: MODES legal = -ILG
Options: MODES statement = -IST
Options: MODES exe = -IEXE
Options: MODES 4x6in = -I*
Options: MODES 5x7in = -I*
Options: MODES 8x10in = -I*
Options: MODES 8.46x12.4in = -I*
Options: MODES 11x15in = -I*
Options: MODES postcard = -IPC
Options: MODES dpc = -IDPC
Options: MODES ec3y = -IEC3Y
Options: MODES 8kaiT = -I*
Options: MODES 16kaiT = -I*
Options: MODES 8kaiC = -I*
Options: MODES 16kaiC = -I*
```

```
Options: MODES com10 = -ICOM10
Options: MODES monarc = -IMonarc
Options: MODES dl = -IDL
Options: MODES c\[45]\ = -IC\1
Options: MODES ca4 = -ICA4
Options: MODES clt = -ICLT
Options: MODES \(.*)mm = -I\lmm
Options: MODES msi-a\[3456] \ = -IMSI-A\1
Options: MODES msi-b\[456] \ = -IMSI-B\1
Options: MODES msi-letter = -IMSI-LT
Options: MODES msi-ledger = -IMSI-LD
Options: MODES msi-statement = -IMSI-ST
Options: MODES msi-folio = -IMSI-FL
Options: MODES msi-legal = -IMSI-LG
Options: MODES msi-exe = -IMSI-EXE
Options: MODES msi-4x6in = -IMSI-4x6in
Options: MODES msi-5x7in = -IMSI-5x7in
Options: MODES msi-8x10in = -IMSI-8x10in
Options: MODES msi-8.46x12.4in = -IMSI-8.46x12.4in
Options: MODES msi-11x15in = -IMSI-11x15in
Options: MODES msi-postcard = -IMSI-PC
Options: MODES msi-dpc = -IMSI-DPC
Options: MODES msi-ec3y = -IMSI-EC3Y
Options: MODES msi-8kaiT = -IMSI-8kaiT
Options: MODES msi-16kaiT = -IMSI-16kaiT
Options: MODES msi-8kaiC = -IMSI-8kaiC
Options: MODES msi-16kaiC = -IMSI-16kaiC
Options: MODES msi-com10 = -ICOM10
Options: MODES msi-monarc = -IMonarc
Options: MODES msi-dl = -IDL
Options: MODES msi-c\[45]\ = -IMSI-C\1
Options: MODES msi-ca4 = -IMSI-CA4
Options: MODES msi-clt = -IMSI-CLT
Options: MODES msi-\(.*)mm = -IMSI-\lmm
Options: MODES face-down = -Ofd
Options: MODES face-up = -Ofu2
Options: MODES finisher = -Ofs
Options: MODES center2 = -Oce2
Options: MODES fs-top = -Ofst
Options: MODES jo\=\(.*) = -Jo\=\1
Options: MODES co\=\(.*) = -CO\=\1
Options: MODES pr\=\(.*) = -Pr\=\1
Options: MODES m\=\(.*) = -M\=\1
```

```
Options: MODES DuplexBook = -D
Options: MODES DuplexList = -d
Options: MODES nc\=\(.*\) = -Nc\=\1
Options: MODES cl = -Cl
Options: MODES ps = -ps
Options: MODES kid\=\(.*\) = -KId\=\1
Options: MODES kpwd\=\(.*\) = -KPwd\=\1
Options: MODES kdoc\=\(.*\) = -KDoc\=\1
```

/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205, defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the fxpif command that is started up.

Important This file can only be used on Document Centre 336.

◇ Option

If the FXDC336.fd file is registered with the print system using the lpfilter command, the paper tray and other features can be selected for printing.

-y *tray_input*

The paper tray-related parameters that can be specified by the lp command are as follows.

tray1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
tray2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
tray3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
tray4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
tray6	Feeds paper from Tray 6.
autopt	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with the paper specified.
a3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
a4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
a5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
a6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
b4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
b5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
b6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
letter	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter paper.
ledger	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger paper.
folio	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio paper.
legal	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal paper.
4x6in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 4x6"paper.
5x7in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 5x7"paper.
8x10in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8x10" paper.
8.46x12.4in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.46x12.4" paper.
11x15in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 11x15" paper.
postcard	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcard.
dpc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with pre-paid postcard.
ec3y	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Choukei 3

	envelope.
8kaiT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
16kaiT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
8kaiC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
16kaiC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
com10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 envelope.
monarc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc envelope.
dl	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL envelope.
c4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C4 envelope.
c5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 envelope.
ca4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 Cover paper.
clt	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
msi-a3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
msi-a4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
msi-a5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
msi-a6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
msi-b4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
msi-b5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
msi-b6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
msi-letter	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
msi-ledger	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
msi-statement	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
msi-folio	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
msi-legal	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal paper.
msi-exe	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Executive paper (7.25x10.5").
msi-4x6in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 4x6" paper.
msi-5x7in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 5x7" paper.
msi-8x10in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8x10" paper.
msi-8.46x12.4in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8.46x12.4"

	paper.
msi-11x15in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 11x15" paper.
msi-postcard	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcard.
msi-dpc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with pre-paid postcard.
msi-ec3y	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Choukei 3 envelope.
msi-8kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
msi-16kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
msi-8kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
msi-16kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
msi-com10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 envelope.
msi-monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc envelope.
msi-dl	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL envelope.
msi-c4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C4 envelope.
msi-c5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 envelope.
msi-ca4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 Cover paper.
msi-clt	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
msi-MxNmm	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper. <i>M</i> (width) and <i>N</i> (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

The following non-standard sizes are available.

Smallest: 76.2x98.4 mm, Largest: 304.8x508.0 mm

297x900 mmf and 210x900 mm long paper will be taken as non-standard sizes.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

-y DuplexBook

Prints with Flip on Long Edge. When Flip on Long Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge. This option can be

specified when specifying the Manual Feed.

-y DuplexList

Prints with Flip on Short Edge. When Flip on Short Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge. This option can be specified when specifying the Manual Feed.

-y nc=*n*

Specifies the number of output copies (the value of *copies* must be a positive integer). If this option is not specified, "1" will be selected.

-y c1

Specifies print output by set. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

-y ps

Processes the input file as a PostScript file. If the file does not begin with "%!", "%!" will be output to the first line. If the file contains "%!", this option will be ignored.

-y tray_output

The output tray-related parameters that can be specified by the lp command are as follows.

face-down	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
face-up	Outputs to the Face Up Tray.
centre2	Outputs to the Centre Output Tray.
finisher	Outputs to the Finisher.
fs-top	Outputs to the Finisher Top Tray.

-y jo=*type*

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB	job	Offset Per Job
SE	set	Offset Per Set

-y m=*type*

Selects a paper type for the Manual Feed. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain
RC	recycled	Recycled
H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)
H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency

-y co=*type*

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
----	------	------

DT	detail	Fine
RH	rough	Rough

-y pr=resolution

Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.

Stand	Standard
Fine	High Quality

-y kid=userid

Adds PJL USERNAME to the header of PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJL switch of the printer is on.

userid is a string of 1 to 24 byte-characters (21H-FFH). An empty string is not allowed.

Important To configure a secure print job, User ID must be specified. Password and DocName are optional.

-y kpwd=password

Adds the PJL HOLDKEY header to the PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJL switch of the printer is on.

password is a string of 0 to 4 ASCII digits ('0' – '9'). An empty string is not allowed.

If the *password* option is absent, the driver will assume *password* to be a zero-length string so that a password will not be required when user selects the job at the printer control panel.

-y kdoc=document

Adds the PJL JOBNAME header to the PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJL switch of the printer is on.

This is the name of the secured print job that would be displayed on the printer control panel.

document is a string of 1 to 24 alphanumeric, '.', '_' or '-' characters. An empty string is not allowed.

If this option is absent, the driver will use "secureprint.ps" as the document name.

◇ Example

To print on A4 paper loaded in the Manual Feed of a printer named "DC336" with the Flip on Long Edge feature turned on, input as follows.

```
%lp -d DC336 -y msi-a4 filename
```

3.32 FXAP550I.fd/FXDC550I.fd (Solaris)

◇ Format

```
/etc/lp/fd/FXAP550I.fd  
/etc/lp/fd/FXDC550I.fd
```

◇ Function

The FXAP550I.fd and FXDC550I.fd files are the respective filter description files of the fxpif filter that adds the unique functions of ApeosPort 550 I/450 I/350 I and DocuCentre 550 I/450 I to PostScript data. The filter description file informs the Solaris print service software about the specifications of the filter. It is registered with the system by the lpfilter command. After the filter is registered with the system, the filter can be started up by the lp command automatically.

The following items are defined by FXDC550I.fd.

/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205, defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the fxpif command that is started up.

```
Input types: postscript  
Output types: FXpostscript  
Printer types: DC550I  
      (Replace with AP550I for ApeosPort 550 I/450 I/350 I)  
Printers: any  
Filter type: slow  
Command: /usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205  
Options: MODES tray\([1-46]\) = -I\1  
Options: MODES a\([3-6]\) = -IA\1  
Options: MODES b\([4-6]\) = -IB\1  
Options: MODES autopt = -IAutoPT  
Options: MODES letter = -ILT  
Options: MODES ledger = -ILD  
Options: MODES folio = -IFL  
Options: MODES legal = -ILG  
Options: MODES statement = -IST  
Options: MODES exe = -IEXE  
Options: MODES 4x6in = -I*  
Options: MODES 5x7in = -I*  
Options: MODES 8x10in = -I*  
Options: MODES 8.46x12.4in = -I*  
Options: MODES 11x15in = -I*  
Options: MODES postcard = -IPC  
Options: MODES dpc = -IDPC  
Options: MODES ec3y = -IEC3Y  
Options: MODES 8kaiT = -I*
```

```

Options: MODES 16kaiT = -I*
Options: MODES 8kaiC = -I*
Options: MODES 16kaiC = -I*
Options: MODES com10 = -ICOM10
Options: MODES monarc = -IMonarc
Options: MODES dl = -IDL
Options: MODES c\([45]\) = -IC\1
Options: MODES ca4 = -ICA4
Options: MODES clt = -ICLT
Options: MODES \(.*\)mm = -I\1mm
Options: MODES msi-a\([3-6]\) = -IMSI-A\1
Options: MODES msi-b\([4-6]\) = -IMSI-B\1
Options: MODES msi-letter = -IMSI-LT
Options: MODES msi-ledger = -IMSI-LD
Options: MODES msi-statement = -IMSI-ST
Options: MODES msi-folio = -IMSI-FL
Options: MODES msi-legal = -IMSI-LG
Options: MODES msi-exe = -IMSI-EXE
Options: MODES msi-4x6in = -IMSI-4x6in
Options: MODES msi-5x7in = -IMSI-5x7in
Options: MODES msi-8x10in = -IMSI-8x10in
Options: MODES msi-8.46x12.4in = -IMSI-8.46x12.4in
Options: MODES msi-11x15in = -IMSI-11x15in
Options: MODES msi-postcard = -IMSI-PC
Options: MODES msi-dpc = -IMSI-DPC
Options: MODES msi-ec3y = -IMSI-EC3Y
Options: MODES msi-8kaiT = -IMSI-8kaiT
Options: MODES msi-16kaiT = -IMSI-16kaiT
Options: MODES msi-8kaiC = -IMSI-8kaiC
Options: MODES msi-16kaiC = -IMSI-16kaiC
Options: MODES msi-com10 = -IMSI-COM10
Options: MODES msi-monarc = -IMSI-Monarc
Options: MODES msi-dl = -IMSI-DL
Options: MODES msi-c\([45]\) = -IMSI-C\1
Options: MODES msi-ca4 = -IMSI-CA4
Options: MODES msi-clt = -IMSI-CLT
Options: MODES msi-\(.*\)mm = -IMSI-\1mm
Options: MODES face-down = -Ofd
Options: MODES face-up = -Ofu2
Options: MODES finisher = -Ofs
Options: MODES center2 = -Oce2
Options: MODES fs-top = -Ofst
Options: MODES jo\=\(.*\) = -Jo\=\1

```

```
Options: MODES co\=\(.*\) = -CO\=\1
Options: MODES pr\=\(.*\) = -Pr\=\1
Options: MODES m\=\(.*\) = -M\=\1
Options: MODES DuplexBook = -D
Options: MODES DuplexList = -d
Options: MODES nc\=\(.*\) = -Nc\=\1
Options: MODES cl = -Cl
Options: MODES ps = -ps
Options: MODES kid\=\(.*\) = -KId\=\1
Options: MODES kpwd\=\(.*\) = -KPwd\=\1
Options: MODES kdoc\=\(.*\) = -KDoc\=\1
```

/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205, defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the fxpif command that is started up.

Important This file can only be used on DocuCentre 550 I/450 I. For ApeosPort 550 I/450 IC350 I, the file is FXAP550I.fd.

◇ Option

If the FXAP550I.fd/FXDC550I.fd file is registered with the print system using the `lpfilter` command, the paper tray and other features can be selected for printing.

`-y tray_input`

The paper tray-related parameters that can be specified by the `lp` command are as follows.

tray1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
tray2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
tray3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
tray4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
tray6	Feeds paper from Tray 6.
autopt	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with the paper specified.
a3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
a4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
a5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
a6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
b4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
b5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
b6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
letter	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter paper.
ledger	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger paper.
folio	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio paper.
legal	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal paper.
4x6in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 4x6" paper.
5x7in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 5x7" paper.
8x10in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8x10" paper.
8.46x12.4in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.46x12.4" paper.

11x15in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 11x15" paper.
postcard	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcard.
dpc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with pre-paid postcard.
ec3y	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Choukei 3 envelope.
8kaiT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
16kaiT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
8kaiC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
16kaiC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
com10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 envelope.
monarc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc envelope.
dl	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL envelope.
c4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C4 envelope.
c5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 envelope.
ca4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 Cover paper.
clt	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
msi-a3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
msi-a4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
msi-a5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
msi-a6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
msi-b4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
msi-b5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
msi-b6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
msi-letter	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
msi-ledger	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
msi-statement	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
msi-folio	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
msi-legal	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal paper.
msi-exe	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Executive paper (7.25x10.5").
msi-4x6in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 4x6"

	paper.
msi-5x7in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 5x7" paper.
msi-8x10in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8x10" paper.
msi-8.46x12.4in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8.46x12.4" paper.
msi-11x15in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 11x15" paper.
msi-postcard	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcard.
msi-dpc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with pre-paid postcard.
msi-ec3y	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Choukei 3 envelope.
msi-8kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
msi-16kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
msi-8kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
msi-16kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
msi-com10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 envelope.
msi-monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc envelope.
msi-dl	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL envelope.
msi-c4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C4 envelope.
msi-c5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 envelope.
msi-ca4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 Cover paper.
msi-clt	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
msi-MxNmm	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper. <i>M</i> (width) and <i>N</i> (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

The following non-standard sizes are available.

Smallest: 76.2x98.4 mm, Largest: 304.8x508.0 mm

297x900 mmf and 210x900 mm long paper will be taken as non-standard sizes.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

-y DuplexBook

Prints with Flip on Long Edge. When Flip on Long Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge. This option can be specified when specifying the Manual Feed.

-y DuplexList

Prints with Flip on Short Edge. When Flip on Short Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge. This option can be specified when specifying the Manual Feed.

-y nc=*n*

Specifies the number of output copies (the value of *copies* must be a positive integer). If this option is not specified, "1" will be selected.

-y cl

Specifies print output by set. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

-y ps

Processes the input file as a PostScript file. If the file does not begin with "%!", "%!" will be output to the first line. If the file contains "%!", this option will be ignored.

-y tray_output

The output tray-related parameters that can be specified by the lp command are as follows.

face-down	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
face-up	Outputs to the Face Up Tray.
centre2	Outputs to the Centre Output Tray.
finisher	Outputs to the Finisher.
fs-top	Outputs to the Finisher Top Tray.

-y jo=*type*

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB	job	Offset Per Job
SE	set	Offset Per Set

-y m=*type*

Selects a paper type for the Manual Feed. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain
RC	recycled	Recycled
H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)

H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency

-y co=type

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
DT	detail	Fine
RH	rough	Rough

-y pr=resolution

Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.

Stand	Standard
Fine	High Quality

-y kid=userid

Adds PJI USERNAME to the header of PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJI switch of the printer is on.

userid is a string of 1 to 24 byte-characters (21H-FFH). An empty string is not allowed.

Important To configure a secure print job, User ID must be specified. Password and DocName are optional.

-y kpwd=password

Adds the PJI HOLDKEY header to the PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJI switch of the printer is on.

password is a string of 0 to 4 ASCII digits ('0' – '9'). An empty string is not allowed. If the *password* option is absent, the driver will assume *password* to be a zero-length string so that a password will not be required when user selects the job at the printer control panel.

-y kdoc=document

Adds the PJI JOBNAME header to the PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJI switch of the printer is on.

This is the name of the secured print job that would be displayed on the printer control panel.

document is a string of 1 to 24 alphanumeric, '.', '_' or '-' characters. An empty string is not allowed.

If this option is absent, the driver will use "*secureprint.ps*" as the document name.

◇ Example

To print on A4 paper loaded in the Manual Feed of a printer named "DC550I" with the Flip on Long Edge feature turned on, input as follows.

```
%lp -d DC550I -y msi-a4 filename
```

3.33 FXAP750I.fd/ FXDC750I.fd (Solaris)

◇ Format

```
/etc/lp/fd/FXAP750I.fd
/etc/lp/fd/FXDC750I.fd
```

◇ Function

The FXAP750I.fd and FXDC750I.fd files are the respective filter description files of the fxpif filter that adds the unique functions of ApeosPort 750 I/650 I and DocuCentre 750 I/650 I to PostScript data. The filter description file informs the Solaris print service software about the specifications of the filter. It is registered with the system by the lpfilter command. After the filter is registered with the system, the filter can be started up by the lp command automatically.

The following items are defined by FXDC750 I.fd.

/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205, defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the fxpif command that is started up.

```
Input types: postscript
Output types: FXpostscript
Printer types: DC750I
    (Replace with AP750I for ApeosPort 750 I/650 I)
Printers: any
Filter type: slow
Command: /usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205
Options: MODES tray\([1-46]\) = -I\1
Options: MODES a\([3-6]\) = -IA\1
Options: MODES b\([4-6]\) = -IB\1
Options: MODES autopt = -IAutoPT
Options: MODES sra3 = -ISRA3
Options: MODES letter = -ILT
Options: MODES ledger = -ILD
Options: MODES folio = -IFL
Options: MODES legal = -ILG
Options: MODES statement = -IST
Options: MODES exe = -IEXE
Options: MODES 4x6in = -I*
Options: MODES 5x7in = -I*
Options: MODES 8x10in = -I*
Options: MODES 8.46x12.4in = -I*
Options: MODES 11x15in = -I*
Options: MODES 12x18in = -I*
Options: MODES 12.6x19.2in = -I*
Options: MODES 13x18in = -I*
```

```
Options: MODES 13x19in = -I*
Options: MODES postcard = -IPC
Options: MODES dpc = -IDPC
Options: MODES ec3 = -IEC3
Options: MODES 8kaiT = -I*
Options: MODES 16kaiT = -I*
Options: MODES 8kaiC = -I*
Options: MODES 16kaiC = -I*
Options: MODES c\([45]\) = -IC\1
Options: MODES ca4 = -ICA4
Options: MODES clt = -ICLT
Options: MODES \(.*\)mm = -I\1mm
Options: MODES msi-a\([3-6]\) = -IMSI-A\1
Options: MODES msi-b\([4-6]\) = -IMSI-B\1
Options: MODES msi-sra3 = -IMSI-SRA3
Options: MODES msi-letter = -IMSI-LT
Options: MODES msi-ledger = -IMSI-LD
Options: MODES msi-folio = -IMSI-FL
Options: MODES msi-legal = -IMSI-LG
Options: MODES msi-statement = -IMSI-ST
Options: MODES msi-exe = -IMSI-EXE
Options: MODES msi-4x6in = -IMSI-4x6in
Options: MODES msi-5x7in = -IMSI-5x7in
Options: MODES msi-8x10in = -IMSI-8x10in
Options: MODES msi-8.46x12.4in = -IMSI-8.46x12.4in
Options: MODES msi-11x15in = -IMSI-11x15in
Options: MODES msi-12x18in = -IMSI-12x18in
Options: MODES msi-12.6x19.2in = -IMSI-2.6x19.2in
Options: MODES msi-13x18in = -IMSI-13x18in
Options: MODES msi-13x19in = -IMSI-13x19in
Options: MODES msi-postcard = -IMSI-PC
Options: MODES msi-dpc = -IMSI-DPC
Options: MODES msi-ec3 = -IMSI-EC3
Options: MODES msi-8kaiT = -IMSI-8kaiT
Options: MODES msi-16kaiT = -IMSI-16kaiT
Options: MODES msi-8kaiC = -IMSI-8kaiC
Options: MODES msi-16kaiC = -IMSI-16kaiC
Options: MODES msi-c\([45]\) = -IMSI-C\1
Options: MODES msi-ca4 = -IMSI-CA4
Options: MODES msi-clt = -IMSI-CLT
Options: MODES msi-\(.*\)mm = -IMSI-\1mm
Options: MODES face-down = -Ofd
Options: MODES finisher = -Ofs
```

```
Options: MODES jo\=\(.*\) = -Jo\=\1
Options: MODES co\=\(.*\) = -CO\=\1
Options: MODES pr\=\(.*\) = -Pr\=\1
Options: MODES m\=\(.*\) = -M\=\1
Options: MODES DuplexBook = -D
Options: MODES DuplexList = -d
Options: MODES nc\=\(.*\) = -Nc\=\1
Options: MODES cl = -Cl
Options: MODES ps = -ps
Options: MODES kid\=\(.*\) = -KId\=\1
Options: MODES kpwd\=\(.*\) = -KPwd\=\1
Options: MODES kdoc\=\(.*\) = -KDoc\=\1
```

/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205, defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the fpxif command that is started up.

Important This file can only be used on DocuCentre 750 I/650 I. For ApeosPort 750 I/650 I, the file is FXAP750I.fd.

◇ Option

If the FXAP750I.fd/FXDC750I.fd file is registered with the print system using the `lpfilter` command, the paper tray and other features can be selected for printing.

`-y tray_input`

The paper tray-related parameters that can be specified by the `lp` command are as follows.

tray1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
tray2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
tray3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
tray4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
tray6	Feeds paper from Tray 6.
autopt	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with the paper specified.
sra3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with sra3 paper.
a3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
a4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
a5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
a6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
b4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
b5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
b6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
letter	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
ledger	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger paper.
folio	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio paper.
legal	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal paper.
statement	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Statement paper.
exe	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Executive paper.

4x6in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 4x6"paper.
5x7in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 5x7"paper.
8x10in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8x10" paper.
8.46x12.4in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.46x12.4" paper.
11x15in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 11x15" paper.
12x18in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 12x18" paper.
12.6x19.2in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 12.6x19.2" paper.
13x18in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 13x18" paper.
13x19in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 13x19" paper.
postcard	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcard.
dpc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with pre-paid postcard.
ec3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Choukei 3 envelope.
8kaiT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
16kaiT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
8kaiC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
16kaiC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
com10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 envelope.
monarc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc envelope.
dl	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL envelope.
c4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C4 envelope.
c5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 envelope.
ca4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 Cover paper.
clt	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
msi-sra3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with sra3 paper.
msi-a3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
msi-a4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
msi-a5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
msi-a6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
msi-b4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
msi-b5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
msi-b6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
msi-letter	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
msi-ledger	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-

	size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
msi-statement	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
msi-folio	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
msi-legal	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal paper.
msi-exe	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Executive paper (7.25x10.5").
msi-4x6in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 4x6" paper.
msi-5x7in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 5x7" paper.
msi-8x10in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8x10" paper.
msi-8.46x12.4in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8.46x12.4" paper.
msi-11x15in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 11x15" paper.
msi-12x18in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 12x18" paper.
msi-12.6x19.2in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 12.6x19.2" paper.
msi-13x18in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 13x18" paper.
msi-13x19in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 13x19" paper.
msi-postcard	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcard.
msi-dpc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with pre-paid postcard.
msi-ec3y	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Choukei 3 envelope.
msi-8kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
msi-16kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
msi-8kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
msi-16kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
msi-com10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 envelope.
msi-monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc

	envelope.
msi-dl	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL envelope.
msi-c4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C4 envelope.
msi-c5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 envelope.
msi-ca4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 Cover paper.
msi-clt	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
msi-MxNmm	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper. <i>M</i> (width) and <i>N</i> (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

The following non-standard sizes are available.

Smallest: 76.2x98.4 mm, Largest: 304.8x508.0 mm

297x900 mmf and 210x900 mm long paper will be taken as non-standard sizes.

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

-y DuplexBook

Prints with Flip on Long Edge. When Flip on Long Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge. This option can be specified when specifying the Manual Feed.

-y DuplexList

Prints with Flip on Short Edge. When Flip on Short Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge. This option can be specified when specifying the Manual Feed.

-y nc=*n*

Specifies the number of output copies (the value of *copies* must be a positive integer). If this option is not specified, "1" will be selected.

-y cl

Specifies print output by set. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

-y ps

Processes the input file as a PostScript file. If the file does not begin with "%!", "%!" will be output to the first line. If the file contains "%!", this option will be ignored.

-y tray_output

The output tray-related parameters that can be specified by the lp command are as follows.

face-down	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
finisher	Outputs to the Finisher.

-y jo=type

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB	job	Offset Per Job
SE	set	Offset Per Set

-y m=type

Selects a paper type for the Manual Feed. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain
RC	recycled	Recycled
H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)
H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency

-y co=type

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
DT	detail	Fine
RH	rough	Rough

-y pr=resolution

Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.

Stand	Standard
Fine	High Quality

-y kid=userid

Adds PJI USERNAME to the header of PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJI switch of the printer is on.

userid is a string of 1 to 24 byte-characters (21H-FFH). An empty string is not allowed.

Important To configure a secure print job, User ID must be specified. Password and DocName are optional.

-y kpwd=password

Adds the PJI HOLDKEY header to the PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJI switch of the printer is on.

password is a string of 0 to 4 ASCII digits ('0' – '9'). An empty string is not allowed. If the *password* option is absent, the driver will assume *password* to be a zero-length string so that a password will not be required when user selects the job at the printer control panel.

-y kdoc=document

Adds the PJI JOBNAME header to the PostScript file to be output. This can only

be used when the PJI switch of the printer is on.

This is the name of the secured print job that would be displayed on the printer control panel.

document is a string of 1 to 24 alphanumeric, '.', '_' or '-' characters. An empty string is not allowed.

If this option is absent, the driver will use "*secureprint.ps*" as the document name.

◇ Example

To print on A4 paper loaded in the Manual Feed of a printer named "DC750I" with the Flip on Long Edge feature turned on, input as follows.

```
%lp -d DC750I -y msi-a4 filename
```

3.34 FXDC23005.fd (Solaris)

◇ Format

`/etc/lp/fd/FXDC23005.fd`

◇ Function

The FXDC23005.fd file is the filter description file of the fxpif filter that adds the unique functions of DocuCentre-II 3005/2055/2005 to PostScript data. The filter description file informs the Solaris print service software about the specifications of the filter. It is registered with the system by the `lpfilter` command. After the filter is registered with the system, the filter can be started up by the `lp` command automatically.

The following items are defined by FXDC23005.fd.

`/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205`, defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the fxpif command that is started up.

```
Input types: postscript
Output types: FXpostscript
Printer types: DC23005
Printers: any
Filter type: slow
Command: /usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205
Options: MODES tray\([1-4]\) = -I\1
Options: MODES a\([3-6]\) = -IA\1
Options: MODES b\([4-6]\) = -IB\1
Options: MODES autopt = -IAutoPT
Options: MODES letter = -ILT
Options: MODES folio = -IFL
Options: MODES legal = -ILG
Options: MODES ledger = -ILD
Options: MODES com10 = -ICOM10
Options: MODES monarc = -IMonarc
Options: MODES dl = -IDL
Options: MODES 4x6in = -I*
Options: MODES 5x7in = -I*
Options: MODES 11x15in = -I*
Options: MODES 8kaiT = -I*
Options: MODES 16kaiT = -I*
Options: MODES 8kaiC = -I*
Options: MODES 16kaiC = -I*
Options: MODES ca4 = -ICA4
Options: MODES clt = -ICLT
Options: MODES \(.*)mm = -I\1mm
Options: MODES msi-a\([3-6]\) = -IMSI-A\1
```

```
Options: MODES msi-b\([4-6]\) = -IMSI-B\1
Options: MODES msi-c\([45]\) = -IMSI-C\1
Options: MODES msi-letter = -IMSI-LT
Options: MODES msi-folio = -IMSI-FL
Options: MODES msi-legal = -IMSI-LG
Options: MODES msi-ledger = -IMSI-Ld
Options: MODES msi-com10 = -IMSI-COM10
Options: MODES msi-monarc = -IMSI-Monarc
Options: MODES msi-dl = -IMSI-DL
Options: MODES msi-4x6in = -IMSI-4x6in
Options: MODES msi-5x7in = -IMSI-5x7in
Options: MODES msi-11x15in = -IMSI-11x15in
Options: MODES msi-8kaiT = -IMSI-8kaiT
Options: MODES msi-16kaiT = -IMSI-16kaiT
Options: MODES msi-8kaiC = -IMSI-8kaiC
Options: MODES msi-16kaiC = -IMSI-16kaiC
Options: MODES msi-ca4 = -IMSI-CA4
Options: MODES msi-clt = -IMSI-CLT
Options: MODES msi-\(.*\)mm = -IMSI-\1mm
Options: MODES face-down = -Ofd
Options: MODES face-up = -Ofu2
Options: MODES finisher = -Ofs
Options: MODES center2 = -Oce2
Options: MODES jo\= \(.*\) = -Jo\=\1
Options: MODES co\= \(.*\) = -CO\=\1
Options: MODES pr\= \(.*\) = -Pr\=\1
Options: MODES m\= \(.*\) = -M\=\1
Options: MODES DuplexBook = -D
Options: MODES DuplexList = -d
Options: MODES nc\= \(.*\) = -Nc\=\1
Options: MODES cl = -Cl
Options: MODES ps = -ps
Options: MODES kid\= \(.*\) = -KId\=\1
Options: MODES kpwd\= \(.*\) = -KPwd\=\1
Options: MODES kdoc\= \(.*\) = -KDoc\=\1
```

/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205, defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the fxpif command that is started up.

Important This file can only be used on DocuCentre-II 3005/2055/2005.

◇ Option

If the FXDC23005.fd file is registered with the print system using the lpfilter command, the paper tray and other features can be selected for printing.

-y *tray_input*

The paper tray-related parameters that can be specified by the `lp` command are as follows.

<code>tray1</code>	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
<code>tray2</code>	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
<code>tray3</code>	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
<code>tray4</code>	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
<code>autopt</code>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with the paper specified.
<code>a3</code>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
<code>a4</code>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
<code>a5</code>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
<code>a6</code>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
<code>b4</code>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
<code>b5</code>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
<code>b6</code>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
<code>letter</code>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
<code>ledger</code>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger paper.
<code>folio</code>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio paper.
<code>legal</code>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal paper.
<code>4x6in</code>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 4x6"paper.
<code>5x7in</code>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 5x7"paper.
<code>11x15in</code>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 11x15" paper.
<code>8kaiT</code>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
<code>16kaiT</code>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
<code>8kaiC</code>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
<code>16kaiC</code>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
<code>com10</code>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 envelope.
<code>monarc</code>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc envelope.
<code>dl</code>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL envelope.
<code>c4</code>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C4 envelope.
<code>c5</code>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 envelope.
<code>ca4</code>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 Cover paper.
<code>clt</code>	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
<code>msi-a3</code>	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
<code>msi-a4</code>	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
<code>msi-a5</code>	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
<code>msi-a6</code>	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.

msi-b4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
msi-b5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
msi-b6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
msi-letter	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
msi-ledger	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
msi-statement	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
msi-folio	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
msi-legal	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal paper.
msi-4x6in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 4x6" paper.
msi-5x7in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 5x7" paper.
msi-11x15in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 11x15" paper.
msi-8kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
msi-16kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
msi-8kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
msi-16kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
msi-com10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 envelope.
msi-monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc envelope.
msi-dl	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL envelope.
msi-c4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C4 envelope.
msi-c5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 envelope.
msi-ca4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 Cover paper.
msi-clt	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
msi-MxNmm	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper. <i>M</i> (width) and <i>N</i> (height) are

positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

The following non-standard sizes are available.

Smallest: 88.9x127.0 mm, Largest: 297.0x432.0 mm

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

-y DuplexBook

Prints with Flip on Long Edge. When Flip on Long Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge. This option can be specified when specifying the Manual Feed.

-y DuplexList

Prints with Flip on Short Edge. When Flip on Short Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge. This option can be specified when specifying the Manual Feed.

-y nc=*n*

Specifies the number of output copies (the value of *copies* must be a positive integer). If this option is not specified, "1" will be selected.

-y cl

Specifies print output by set. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

-y ps

Processes the input file as a PostScript file. If the file does not begin with "%!", "%!" will be output to the first line. If the file contains "%!", this option will be ignored.

-y tray_output

The output tray-related parameters that can be specified by the lp command are as follows.

face-down	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
finisher	Outputs to the Finisher.

-y jo=*type*

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB	job	Offset Per Job
SE	set	Offset Per Set

-y m=*type*

Selects a paper type for the Manual Feed. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain
RC	recycled	Recycled
H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)

H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency

-y co=type

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
DT	detail	Fine
RH	rough	Rough

-y pr=resolution

Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.

Stand	Standard
Fine	High Quality

-y kid=userid

Adds PJI USERNAME to the header of PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJI switch of the printer is on.

userid is a string of 1 to 24 byte-characters (21H-FFH). An empty string is not allowed.

Important To configure a secure print job, User ID and Password must be specified. DocName is optional.

-y kpwd=password

Adds the PJI HOLDKEY header to the PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJI switch of the printer is on.

password is a string of 0 to 4 ASCII digits ('0' – '9'). An empty string is not allowed. If the *password* option is absent, the driver will assume *password* to be a zero-length string so that a password will not be required when user selects the job at the printer control panel.

-y kdoc=document

Adds the PJI JOBNAME header to the PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJI switch of the printer is on.

This is the name of the secured print job that would be displayed on the printer control panel.

document is a string of 1 to 24 alphanumeric, '.', '_' or '-' characters. An empty string is not allowed.

If this option is absent, the driver will use "secureprint.ps" as the document name.

◇ Example

To print on A4 paper loaded in the Manual Feed of a printer named "DC23005" with the Flip on Long Edge feature turned on, input as follows.

```
%lp -d DC23005 -y msi-a4 filename
```


3.35 FXAP4000.fd/FXDC4000.fd (Solaris)

◇ Format

```
/etc/lp/fd/FXAP24000.fd
/etc/lp/fd/FXDC24000.fd
```

◇ Function

The FXAP24000.fd and FXDC24000.fd files are the respective filter description files of the fxpif filter that adds the unique functions of ApeosPort-II 5010/4000/3000 and DocuCentre-II 5010/4000 to PostScript data. The filter description file informs the Solaris print service software about the specifications of the filter. It is registered with the system by the lpfilter command. After the filter is registered with the system, the filter can be started up by the lp command automatically.

The following items are defined by FXDC24000.fd.

/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205, defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the fxpif command that is started up.

```
Input types: postscript
Output types: FXpostscript
Printer types: DC24000
    (Replace with AP24000 for ApeosPort-II 5010/4000/3000)
Printers: any
Filter type: slow
Command: /usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205
Options: MODES tray\([1-46]\) = -I\1
Options: MODES a\([3-6]\) = -IA\1
Options: MODES b\([4-6]\) = -IB\1
Options: MODES autopt = -IAutoPT
Options: MODES letter = -ILT
Options: MODES ledger = -ILD
Options: MODES folio = -IFL
Options: MODES legal = -ILG
Options: MODES statement = -IST
Options: MODES exe = -IEXE
Options: MODES 4x6in = -I*
Options: MODES 5x7in = -I*
Options: MODES 8x10in = -I*
Options: MODES 8.46x12.4in = -I*
Options: MODES 11x15in = -I*
Options: MODES postcard = -IPC
Options: MODES dpc = -IDPC
Options: MODES ec3y = -IEC3Y
Options: MODES 8kaiT = -I*
```

```
Options: MODES 16kaiT = -I*
Options: MODES 8kaiC = -I*
Options: MODES 16kaiC = -I*
Options: MODES com10 = -ICOM10
Options: MODES monarc = -IMonarc
Options: MODES dl = -IDL
Options: MODES c\[45]\) = -IC\1
Options: MODES ca4 = -ICA4
Options: MODES clt = -ICLT
Options: MODES \(.*\)mm = -I\1mm
Options: MODES msi-a\[3-6]\) = -IMSI-A\1
Options: MODES msi-b\[4-6]\) = -IMSI-B\1
Options: MODES msi-letter = -IMSI-LT
Options: MODES msi-ledger = -IMSI-LD
Options: MODES msi-statement = -IMSI-ST
Options: MODES msi-folio = -IMSI-FL
Options: MODES msi-legal = -IMSI-LG
Options: MODES msi-exe = -IMSI-EXE
Options: MODES msi-4x6in = -IMSI-4x6in
Options: MODES msi-5x7in = -IMSI-5x7in
Options: MODES msi-8x10in = -IMSI-8x10in
Options: MODES msi-8.46x12.4in = -IMSI-8.46x12.4in
Options: MODES msi-11x15in = -IMSI-11x15in
Options: MODES msi-postcard = -IMSI-PC
Options: MODES msi-dpc = -IMSI-DPC
Options: MODES msi-ec3y = -IMSI-EC3Y
Options: MODES msi-8kaiT = -IMSI-8kaiT
Options: MODES msi-16kaiT = -IMSI-16kaiT
Options: MODES msi-8kaiC = -IMSI-8kaiC
Options: MODES msi-16kaiC = -IMSI-16kaiC
Options: MODES msi-com10 = -IMSI-COM10
Options: MODES msi-monarc = -IMSI-Monarc
Options: MODES msi-dl = -IMSI-DL
Options: MODES msi-c\[45]\) = -IMSI-C\1
Options: MODES msi-ca4 = -IMSI-CA4
Options: MODES msi-clt = -IMSI-CLT
Options: MODES msi-\(.*\)mm = -IMSI-\1mm
Options: MODES face-down = -Ofd
Options: MODES face-up = -Ofu2
Options: MODES finisher = -Ofs
Options: MODES center2 = -Oce2
Options: MODES fs-top = -Ofst
Options: MODES jo\=\(.*\) = -Jo\=\1
```

```
Options: MODES co\=\(.*\) = -CO\=\1
Options: MODES pr\=\(.*\) = -Pr\=\1
Options: MODES m\=\(.*\) = -M\=\1
Options: MODES DuplexBook = -D
Options: MODES DuplexList = -d
Options: MODES nc\=\(.*\) = -Nc\=\1
Options: MODES cl = -Cl
Options: MODES ps = -ps
Options: MODES kid\=\(.*\) = -KId\=\1
Options: MODES kpwd\=\(.*\) = -KPwd\=\1
Options: MODES kdoc\=\(.*\) = -KDoc\=\1
```

/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205, defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the fpxif command that is started up.

Important This file can only be used on DocuCentre-II 5010/4000. For ApeosPort-II 5010/4000/3000, the file is FXAP24000.fd.

◇ Option

If the FXAP24000.fd/FXDC24000.fd file is registered with the print system using the `lpfilter` command, the paper tray and other features can be selected for printing.

`-y tray_input`

The paper tray-related parameters that can be specified by the `lp` command are as follows.

tray1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
tray2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
tray3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.
tray4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
tray6	Feeds paper from Tray 6.
autopt	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with the paper specified.
a3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
a4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
a5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
a6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
b4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
b5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
b6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
letter	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter paper.
ledger	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger paper.
folio	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio paper.
legal	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal paper.
4x6in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 4x6" paper.
5x7in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 5x7" paper.
8x10in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8x10" paper.
8.46x12.4in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8.46x12.4" paper.

11x15in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 11x15" paper.
postcard	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcard.
dpc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with pre-paid postcard.
ec3y	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Choukei 3 envelope.
8kaiT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
16kaiT	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
8kaiC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
16kaiC	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
com10	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with COM10 envelope.
monarc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Monarc envelope.
dl	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with DL envelope.
c4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C4 envelope.
c5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with C5 envelope.
ca4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 Cover paper.
clt	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
msi-a3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
msi-a4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
msi-a5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
msi-a6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
msi-b4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
msi-b5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
msi-b6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
msi-letter	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
msi-ledger	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
msi-statement	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Statement paper (Half Letter, 5.5x8.5").
msi-folio	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
msi-legal	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal paper.
msi-exe	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Executive paper (7.25x10.5").
msi-4x6in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 4x6"

	paper.
msi-5x7in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 5x7" paper.
msi-8x10in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8x10" paper.
msi-8.46x12.4in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8.46x12.4" paper.
msi-11x15in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 11x15" paper.
msi-postcard	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcard.
msi-dpc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with pre-paid postcard.
msi-ec3y	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Choukei 3 envelope.
msi-8kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8K (267x388mm) paper.
msi-16kaiT	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16K (267x194mm) paper.
msi-8kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 8KC (270x390mm) paper.
msi-16kaiC	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 16KC (270x195mm) paper.
msi-com10	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with COM10 envelope.
msi-monarc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Monarc envelope.
msi-dl	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with DL envelope.
msi-c4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C4 envelope.
msi-c5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with C5 envelope.
msi-ca4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 Cover paper.
msi-clt	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
msi-MxNmm	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with MxNmm non-standard-size paper. <i>M</i> (width) and <i>N</i> (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

The following non-standard sizes are available.

Smallest: 89.3x98.4 mm, Largest: 296.7x431.8 mm

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

-y DuplexBook

Prints with Flip on Long Edge. When Flip on Long Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge. This option can be specified when specifying the Manual Feed.

-y DuplexList

Prints with Flip on Short Edge. When Flip on Short Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge. This option can be specified when specifying the Manual Feed.

-y nc=*n*

Specifies the number of output copies (the value of *copies* must be a positive integer). If this option is not specified, "1" will be selected.

-y cl

Specifies print output by set. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

-y ps

Processes the input file as a PostScript file. If the file does not begin with "%!", "%!" will be output to the first line. If the file contains "%!", this option will be ignored.

-y tray_output

The output tray-related parameters that can be specified by the lp command are as follows.

face-down	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
face-up	Outputs to the Face Up Tray.
centre2	Outputs to the Centre Output Tray.
finisher	Outputs to the Finisher.
fs-top	Outputs to the Finisher Top Tray.

-y jo=*type*

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB	job	Offset Per Job
SE	set	Offset Per Set

-y m=*type*

Selects a paper type for the Manual Feed. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain
RC	recycled	Recycled
H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)
H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency

-y co=type

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
DT	detail	Fine
RH	rough	Rough

-y pr=resolution

Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.

Stand	Standard
Fine	High Quality

-y kid=userid

Adds PJL USERNAME to the header of PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJL switch of the printer is on.

userid is a string of 1 to 24 byte-characters (21H-FFH). An empty string is not allowed.

Important To configure a secure print job, User ID must be specified. Password and DocName are optional.

-y kpwd=password

Adds the PJL HOLDKEY header to the PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJL switch of the printer is on.

password is a string of 0 to 4 ASCII digits ('0' – '9'). An empty string is not allowed. If the *password* option is absent, the driver will assume *password* to be a zero-length string so that a password will not be required when user selects the job at the printer control panel.

-y kdoc=document

Adds the PJL JOBNAME header to the PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJL switch of the printer is on.

This is the name of the secured print job that would be displayed on the printer control panel.

document is a string of 1 to 24 alphanumeric, '.', '_' or '-' characters. An empty string is not allowed.

If this option is absent, the driver will use "secureprint.ps" as the document name.

◇ Example

To print on A4 paper loaded in the Manual Feed of a printer named "DC24000" with the Flip on Long Edge feature turned on, input as follows.

```
%lp -d DC24000 -y msi-a4 filename
```

3.36 FXAP27000.fd/ FXDC27000.fd (Solaris)

◇ Format

```
/etc/lp/fd/FXAP27000.fd
/etc/lp/fd/FXDC27000.fd
```

◇ Function

The FXAP27000.fd and FXDC27000.fd files are the respective filter description files of the fxpif filter that adds the unique functions of ApeosPort-II 7000/6000 and DocuCentre-II 7000/6000 to PostScript data. The filter description file informs the Solaris print service software about the specifications of the filter. It is registered with the system by the lpfilter command. After the filter is registered with the system, the filter can be started up by the lp command automatically.

The following items are defined by FXDC27000.fd.

/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205, defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the fxpif command that is started up.

```
Input types: postscript
Output types: FXpostscript
Printer types: DC27000
    (Replace with AP27000 for ApeosPort-II 7000/6000)
Printers: any
Filter type: slow
Command: /usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205
Options: MODES tray\([1-467]\) = -I\1
Options: MODES a\([3-6]\) = -IA\1
Options: MODES b\([4-6]\) = -IB\1
Options: MODES autopt = -IAutoPT
Options: MODES letter = -ILT
Options: MODES ledger = -ILD
Options: MODES folio = -IFL
Options: MODES legal = -ILG
Options: MODES 5x7in = -I*
Options: MODES 8x10in = -I*
Options: MODES 11x15in = -I*
Options: MODES 12x18in = -I*
Options: MODES postcard = -IPC
Options: MODES dpc = -IDPC
Options: MODES c\([45]\) = -IC\1
Options: MODES ca4 = -ICA4
Options: MODES clt = -ICLT
Options: MODES \(.*)mm = -I\1mm
Options: MODES msi-a\([3-6]\) = -IMSI-A\1
```



```
Options: MODES msi-b\([4-6]\) = -IMSI-B\1
Options: MODES msi-letter = -IMSI-LT
Options: MODES msi-ledger = -IMSI-LD
Options: MODES msi-folio = -IMSI-FL
Options: MODES msi-legal = -IMSI-LG
Options: MODES msi-5x7in = -IMSI-5x7in
Options: MODES msi-11x15in = -IMSI-11x15in
Options: MODES msi-12x18in = -IMSI-12x18in
Options: MODES msi-postcard = -IMSI-PC
Options: MODES msi-dpc = -IMSI-DPC
Options: MODES msi-c\([45]\) = -IMSI-C\1
Options: MODES msi-ca4 = -IMSI-CA4
Options: MODES msi-clt = -IMSI-CLT
Options: MODES msi-\(.*\)mm = -IMSI-\1mm
Options: MODES face-down = -Ofd
Options: MODES finisher = -Ofs
Options: MODES jo\= \(.*\) = -Jo\=\1
Options: MODES co\= \(.*\) = -Co\=\1
Options: MODES pr\= \(.*\) = -Pr\=\1
Options: MODES m\= \(.*\) = -M\=\1
Options: MODES DuplexBook = -D
Options: MODES DuplexList = -d
Options: MODES nc\= \(.*\) = -Nc\=\1
Options: MODES toner_save = -t
Options: MODES cl = -Cl
Options: MODES ps = -ps
Options: MODES kid\= \(.*\) = -KId\=\1
Options: MODES kpwd\= \(.*\) = -KPwd\=\1
Options: MODES kdoc\= \(.*\) = -KDoc\=\1
```

/usr/lib/lp/postscript/postfxps205, defined by the command, is a symbolic file. In actual fact, it is the fxpif command that is started up.

Important This file can only be used on DocuCentre-II 7000/6000. For ApeosPort-II 7000/6000, the file is FXAP27000.fd.

◇ Option

If the FXAP27000.fd/FXDC27000.fd file is registered with the print system using the lpfilter command, the paper tray and other features can be selected for printing.

-y *tray_input*

The paper tray-related parameters that can be specified by the lp command are as follows.

tray1	Feeds paper from Tray 1.
tray2	Feeds paper from Tray 2.
tray3	Feeds paper from Tray 3.

tray4	Feeds paper from Tray 4.
tray6	Feeds paper from Tray 6.
tray7	Feeds paper from Tray 7.
autopt	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with the paper specified.
a3	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A3 paper.
a4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 paper.
a5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A5 paper.
a6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A6 paper.
b4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B4 paper.
b5	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B5 paper.
b6	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with B6 paper.
letter	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter-size paper.
ledger	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Ledger paper.
folio	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio paper.
legal	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 14" Legal paper.
5x7in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 5x7" paper.
11x15in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 11x15" paper.
12x18in	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with 12x18" paper.
postcard	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with postcard.
dpc	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with pre-paid postcard.
ca4	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with A4 Cover paper.
clt	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
msi-a3	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A3 paper.
msi-a4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 paper.
msi-a5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A5 paper.
msi-a6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A6 paper.
msi-b4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B4 paper.
msi-b5	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B5 paper.
msi-b6	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with B6 paper.
msi-letter	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter-size paper.
msi-ledger	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Ledger-size paper (Double Letter, 11x17").
msi-folio	Feeds paper from the tray loaded with Folio paper (13" Legal, Government Legal, 8.5x13").
msi-legal	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 14" Legal paper.
msi-5x7in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 5x7" paper.
msi-11x15in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 11x15" paper.
msi-12x18in	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with 12x18"

	paper.
msi-postcard	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with postcard.
msi-dpc	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with pre-paid postcard.
msi-ca4	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with A4 Cover paper.
msi-clt	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with Letter Cover (9x11") paper.
msi- <i>MxNmm</i>	Feeds paper from the Manual Feed loaded with <i>MxNmm</i> non-standard-size paper. <i>M</i> (width) and <i>N</i> (height) are positive real numbers (up to one decimal place).

The following non-standard sizes are available.

Smallest: 100.2x148.4 mm, Largest: 304.8x456.8 mm

If this option is not specified or if the specified tray cannot be used, paper will be fed from the default tray.

-y DuplexBook

Prints with Flip on Long Edge. When Flip on Long Edge is specified for printing, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the long edge. This option can be specified when specifying the Manual Feed.

-y DuplexList

Prints with Flip on Short Edge. When Flip on Short Edge is specified, the print direction and position will be adjusted and both sides of the paper will be printed so that the pages can be flipped on the short edge. This option can be specified when specifying the Manual Feed.

-y toner_save

Prints using the Draft Mode. The resulting print will be lighter than a normal print.

-y nc=*n*

Specifies the number of output copies (the value of *copies* must be a positive integer). If this option is not specified, "1" will be selected.

-y cl

Specifies print output by set. If the "copies" option is not specified, this option will be ignored.

-y ps

Processes the input file as a PostScript file. If the file does not begin with "%!", "%!" will be output to the first line. If the file contains "%!", this option will be ignored.

-y tray_output

The output tray-related parameters that can be specified by the lp command are as follows.

face-down	Outputs to the Face Down Tray.
finisher	Outputs to the Finisher.

-y jo=*type*

Selects the Job Offset. The following Job Offset options are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

JB	job	Offset Per Job
SE	set	Offset Per Set

-y m=type

Selects a paper type for the Manual Feed. The following paper types are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AN	any	No setting
PL	plain	Plain
RC	recycled	Recycled
H1	hwpaper1	Heavyweight 1 (60-156 g/m ²)
H2	hwpaper2	Heavyweight 2 (157-216 g/m ²)
OH	ohp	Transparency
TN	thin	Thin
HO	holed	Punched
LB1	label1	Label 1
LB2	label2	Label 2
TB1	tabbed1	Indexed 1
TB2	tabbed2	Indexed 2

-y co=type

Selects a halftone setting. The following halftone settings are available. Of the two values, the first two uppercase characters indicate the abbreviated form.

AU	auto	Auto
DT	detail	Fine
RH	rough	Rough

-y pr=resolution

Selects the Print Mode. The following Print Mode options are available.

Stand	Standard
Fine	High Quality

-y kid=userid

Adds PJI USERNAME to the header of PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJI switch of the printer is on.

userid is a string of 1 to 24 byte-characters (21H-FFH). An empty string is not allowed.

Important To configure a secure print job, User ID must be specified. Password and DocName are optional.

-y kpwd=password

Adds the PJI HOLDKEY header to the PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJI switch of the printer is on.

password is a string of 0 to 4 ASCII digits ('0' – '9'). An empty string is not allowed. If the *password* option is absent, the driver will assume *password* to be a

zero-length string so that a password will not be required when user selects the job at the printer control panel.

-y kdoc=*document*

Adds the PJI JOBNAME header to the PostScript file to be output. This can only be used when the PJI switch of the printer is on.

This is the name of the secured print job that would be displayed on the printer control panel.

document is a string of 1 to 24 alphanumeric, '.', '_' or '-' characters. An empty string is not allowed.

If this option is absent, the driver will use "*secureprint.ps*" as the document name.

◇ Example

To print on A4 paper loaded in the Manual Feed of a printer named "DC27000" with the Flip on Long Edge feature turned on, input as follows.

```
%lp -d DC27000 -y msi-a4 filename
```

Chapter 4 Precautions and Limitations

4.1 During Installation

Pay attention to the following points during installation.

For the Printer

- ▶ For printers that support other emulation print languages, the print mode must be set to PostScript mode. Refer to the "User Manual" for details on the settings.

For the Workstation

- ▶ [Solaris/Linux/HP-UX] The supported OS are noted in the CD-ROM guide.
- ▶ [Solaris/Linux/HP-UX] 20MB of free disk space is required during installation, including temporary working space.
- ▶ [Linux/HP-UX] The installation must be performed by a power user. Request the network administrator to perform the installation if you do not have the rights of a power user.
- ▶ [Solaris] If PrintManager, started up using the Administration Tool (admintool), provided by Solaris, is used, the printer content type may be changed. When "lpstat -p printer name -l" is entered and "Content types: postscript" is returned, the printer must be deleted and re-installed using the lpadmin command. Do not use admintool to edit the printer registered via the UNIX Driver.

Also, use the lpadmin command to register the default printer. (lpadmin -d printer name)
To suppress banner sheet output, change "nobanner=no" to "nobanner=yes" in the /etc/lp/interfaces/printer_name file.

- ▶ [Solaris] When "lpstat -p printer name -l" is entered and "Content types: postscript" is returned, the printer must be deleted and re-installed using the lpadmin command.
- ▶ [HP-UX] The output printer must be registered with the system.
The output printer can be registered by using commands such as SAM.
For more information, refer to the HP-UX-related manuals.
- ▶ [Solaris/Linux/HP-UX] To install into the default installation directory /usr/local/fxbin, the /usr/local directory must already exist.

4.2 During Printing

Pay attention to the following points during printing.

Important In the case of DP240A, please use `txt2ps2` as the command and `TXT2PSOPTION` as the environment variable.

Using the `lp/lpr` command (Solaris/Linux/HP-UX)

- ▶ If an option is specified incorrectly, no error message will be output. If printing is not done after the `lp` command is executed, error messages will be output once each utility is activated individually. (In the case of Solaris, the error will be displayed. In the case of Linux, the error will be output to the error log file specified using `printcap`.)
- ▶ When printing EUC text, the environmental variable `EUC2PS2OPTION` will be ignored.
- ▶ When printing EUC text, if a BS code is found at the beginning of a line, the print position of the next character will be to the left of the beginning of the line.
- ▶ When printing EUC text, if multiple tab codes are found in a line, the tab positions may not align due to automatic line feed. If this happens, specify the `l` or `w` option.
- ▶ When printing EUC text, the number of columns specified by the `w` option does not reflect the number of characters actually printed. The actual number of single-byte characters to be printed is derived by deducting the output column position (`outcolumns`) specified by the `o` option from the number of columns specified by the `w` option.
- ▶ If the same or similar option is specified, the one specified later will prevail.
- ▶ When printing images, if the output position option (1) specifies an area beyond the printable area of the printer, data beyond the printable area will not be printed. The printable area depends on the printer model. For more information, refer to the printer manual. (In Solaris, images cannot be printed directly using the `lp` command.)

Using the `euc2ps2` command (Solaris/Linux/HP-UX)

- ▶ When the same option is specified twice, the later setting will prevail. As `EUC2PS2OPTION` is analyzed before options in the command line, it is possible to temporarily modify the options already set in `EUC2PS2OPTION` by specifying in the command line.
- ▶ The default output of `euc2ps2` will not output the comment description (`%%page:m n`) of the page number. This is because the converted PostScript language program controls the line feed and form feed. Hence, when the output of `euc2ps2` is to be taken as the input of another application (`psrev` of `TRANSCRIPT`, etc.), insert the line specification (`-l`lines) and add the page number description.
- ▶ If a BS code is found at the beginning of a line, the print position of the next character will be to the left of the beginning of the line.
- ▶ If multiple tab codes are found in a line, the tab positions may not align due to automatic line feed. If this happens, specify the `-l` or `-w` option.
- ▶ The number of columns specified by the `-w` option does not reflect the number of characters actually printed. The actual number of single-byte characters to be printed is derived by deducting the output column position (`outcolumns`) specified by the `-o` option from the number of columns specified by the `-w` option.

- ▶ The -w, -l, -o, -L and -mg options cannot be used at the same time.
- ▶ The start positions of margins of the margin specification option (-mg=u:b:r:l) are not set against the edge of paper but from the margins of the printable area for the respective paper. The margins are set against the printable area for paper allowed by the printer. For more information, refer to the printer manual.
- ▶ Use the -ps option only when a PostScript file that contains no "%!" at the beginning of the file is used as a PostScript file. If a normal text file is input, it will not function correctly.
- ▶ To use the same options as those of the fxpif filter using EUC2PSOPTION, set the user home directory in the environment variable HOME. If the environment variable HOME is not set up, the same options as those of the fxpif filter cannot be used. (Linux)

**Using the sunras2ps2/sunras2g4/tiff2ps2/tiff2g4/xwd2ps2/xwd2g4 command
(sunras2ps2/sunras2g4 apply to Solaris)**

- ▶ If the same option is specified, or if s, S are both specified, the one specified later will prevail.
- ▶ If the size option (-s, -S) is not specified, scaling will be executed taking one pixel of the image data as one pixel of the printer.
- ▶ If the output position option (-l left bottom) specifies a point beyond the printable area of the printer, data beyond the printable area will not be printed. The margins are set against the printable area for paper allowed by the printer. For more information, refer to the printer manual.

Using the tiff2ps2/tiff2g4 command (Solaris/Linux/HP-UX)

- ▶ The following four compression formats are supported.
 - Huffman compression (CCITT Group 3 transformed Huffman run length encoding)
 - Fax-CCITT3 compression (facsimile-compatible CCITT Group 3)
 - PackBits compression
 - No compression
- ✕ TIFF files that contain multiple images in one file are not supported even in the case of the above-mentioned compression formats.

Using the xwd2ps2/xwd2g4 command (Solaris/Linux/HP-UX)

- ▶ The following three compression formats are supported.
 - The visual class is StaticGray and the pixel is 1-bit.
 - The visual class is PseudoColor and the pixel is 4-bit or 8-bit. The image format is Zpixmap.
 - The visual class is TrueColor and the pixel is 24-bit. The image format is Zpixmap.

Using the fxpif command (Linux)

- ▶ Use the -ps option only when a PostScript file that contains no "%!" at the beginning of the file is used as a PostScript file. If a normal text file is input, it will not function correctly.

Using the fxpif/fxpvf/fxpof command (Linux)

- ▶ Usually, the -w and -l options will correspond to the respective pw and pl entries of /etc/printcap. However, this filter ignores the pw and pl entries of /etc/printcap. Thus, the pw and pl entries cannot be used to change the option for each paper size.

Using the fxoption command (Linux)

- ▶ If the default command option setup file of the individual user (\$HOME/.fxpsdefault, \$HOME/.fxpsdefault205 and \$HOME/.fxpsdefault240A) for the specified printer is not found, a default command option file will be created automatically.
- ▶ If the environment variable HOME is not set up, the fxoption command will not create or update the default command option setup file of the individual user. To use the fxoption command, set up a home directory for the user in the environment variable HOME.
- ▶ If there are pending print jobs, the fxoption command cannot be used. If there are pending print jobs, wait till they have been processed before executing the fxoption command.

Using the Stapler (Solaris/Linux/HP-UX)

- ▶ When using the Finisher option after installation, the user cannot specify staple function from the UNIX Driver.

Printing a PostScript File (Solaris/Linux/HP-UX)

- ▶ In the case of a PostScript file with options such as paper size specified, if the same options are specified using the fxpif (**Linux**) or the lp command (Solaris/HP-UX), the specified options will be ignored.

Printing image files from Solaris (Solaris)

- ▶ When printing an image file from Solaris, the user cannot specify and print the image file directly using the lp command. Use sunras2ps2, sunras2g4, tiff2ps2, tiff2g4, xwd2ps2 or xwd2g4 to convert the file into a PostScript file and print the file with the lp command after conversion.

Example: Printing an XWD image to the default printer.

```
% xwd2ps2 file.xwd | lp
```

2 Sided Printing (Solaris/Linux/HP-UX)

- ▶ For 2 Sided Print, paper cannot be fed from the Manual Feed. 2 Sided Print cannot be done on printers not installed with the Duplex Module.

About XJCL (Solaris/Linux/HP-UX)

- ▶ When using the lp or lpr command, the XJCL command will be output at the start of the PostScript file. By adding the XJCL command, a tabulation list will be created in the printer. With this, there is no need to disable the JCL switch. For information on the output method of the tabulation list, refer to the printer manual.

In addition, when printing the PostScript file with the XJCL command added, the owner name and host name described in the file will not be changed. To change the owner name or host name, delete the XJCL command in the PostScript file, change the description to only PostScript and output the file. The XJCL options cannot be used on Mono2and DP240A.

The print history containing the user name and host name will be recorded in the printer.

About PjL (Solaris)

- ▶ Secure Print cannot be done on printers not installed with a Hard Disk.
- ▶ When using Secure Print, the PjL command will be output at the start of the PostScript file.
- ▶ Secure Print feature is not available on Mono.

About the header/footer option (-Hd=*position:format:page*, -Hf *headerfont*)

(*euc2ps2*, *txt2ps2*, *sunras2ps2/sunras2g4*, *tiff2ps2/tiff2g4*, *xwd2ps2/xwd2g4*, *fxpof*, *fxpvf*, *fxoption*)

- ▶ If the paper size is not specified when using this option, the header/footer will be output at the location in A4 paper by default. To specify the paper size, specify it when using the header/footer option. (For the PostScript file that was converted using an option, the output location of the header/footer will not change if the paper size is specified using an option of the lp command.)
- ▶ The margins will be specified automatically if this option is used. When using together with the margin specification option, if the value is smaller than the following value specified automatically, it will be ignored.

Text

Top	0.23 inch
Bottom	0.06 inch
Right	0.03 inch
Left	0.09 inch

Image

Bottom	0.3 inch
--------	----------

- ▶ When this option is used, the line number and character length will be ignored. In addition, the horizontal, 2-column specification cannot be used.
- ▶ For PostScript files, there may be no output even if output all pages was specified. If this happens, specify to output only the first page.
- ▶ This cannot be used when the lp command is used in Solaris.

Specifying the Finisher in Document Centre 451/551/506/606/706 (Solaris/Linux/HP-UX)

- ▶ In Document Centre 451/551/506/606/706, the Finisher can only be selected automatically. For printers installed with the Finisher, if the output destination option is not specified, output will be sent to Finisher 1. In Document Centre 506/606/706, only Finisher Tray Main and Finisher Tray 2 can be used. If Tray 1 is specified, output will be sent to Finisher Tray Main.

About the TBCP filter (Solaris/Linux/HP-UX)

- ▶ Make sure the printer that can specify whether the TBCP filter is valid/invalid is a valid printer.

Appendix

A Printing to Network Printers

[Linux]

With an interface board installed on the printer, the UNIX Driver can print in an environment where the printer is connected directly to the network. This product comes with a sample script to run under such an environment. There is no need to use this sample program when using Solaris 2.x or later. Printing can be done in a network environment by setting up the remote printer. When using Solaris 2.x or later, refer to "A.2 Using Solaris 2.4 or later".

The following section contains information on this software.

Important This software is provided as a sample program and its operation is not guaranteed.

If the program does not run as desired, modify it.

A.1 Using the Sample Script

When printing in an environment that runs the sample script, the output data received by the print server from the client host will be converted by the activated filter. Thereafter the data will be sent directly to the printer. The original output data received by the print server will be sent to /dev/null and removed.

The following is the section on additions to /etc/printcap during installation. The following are added to etc/printcap during the installation. When the host name is assigned to the printer by rm= and rp= is Laser Press 2100 PS, lp will be specified. For other models, PS will be specified. The following is an example where rm=laserpress and rm=lp are specified.

```
net_LBP|RemoteLaserPress|No depends on TRAY and PAPER:\
:lp=/dev/null:sd=/var/spool/lbp:\
:lf=/usr/adm/lbd-errs:af=/usr/adm/fxpsacct:\
:if=/usr/lib/fxps/fxpif_sample.sh:\
:sb:sf:mx#0:
RLP|RemoteLaserPress|No depends on TRAY and PAPER:\
:lp=:rp=lp:rm=laserpress:sd=/var/spool/rlbp:\
:lf=/usr/adm/rlpd-errs:mx#0:
```

These lines are commented out by "#" signs. Delete the "#" signs to make these lines valid.

A.2 Using Solaris 2.4 or Later

For Solaris 2.4 or later, printing can be done in a network environment by setting up the remote printer. For details on the procedure, refer to "2.5.1 Installation/Printer Setting".

B Available Fonts

Fonts that can be used by the UNIX Driver and the printer are as follows.

B.1 European Fonts

The European fonts available to the various printers are as follows.

The default for the UNIX Driver is Courier.

To specify a font, enter the font name as-is after the "-f" option.

Example: % **euc2ps2 -fTimesNewRomanPS-BoldItalicMT** *filename*

- Document Centre 250/350/400
- Document Centre 451/551
- ACaslon-Italic
- ACaslon-Regular
- ACaslon-Semibold
- ACaslon-SemiboldItalic
- AGaramond-Bold
- AGaramond-BoldItalic
- AGaramond-Italic
- AGaramond-Regular
- AlbertusMT-Italic
- AlbertusMT-Light
- AlbertusMT
- Americana-ExtraBold
- Americana
- AntiqueOlive-Bold
- AntiqueOlive-Compact
- AntiqueOlive-Italic
- AntiqueOlive-Roman
- AntiqueOliveCE-Bold
- AntiqueOliveCE-Compact
- AntiqueOliveCE-Italic
- AntiqueOliveCE-Roman
- Apple-Chancery
- Apple-ChanceryCE
- Arial-BoldItalicMT
- Arial-BoldMT
- Arial-ItalicMT
- ArialCE-Bold
- ArialCE-BoldItalic
- ArialCE-Italic
- ArialCE
- ArialMT
- AvantGarde-Book
- AvantGarde-BookOblique
- AvantGarde-Demi
- AvantGarde-DemiOblique
- AvantGardeCE-Book
- AvantGardeCE-BookOblique
- AvantGardeCE-Demi
- AvantGardeCE-DemiOblique
- Barmeno-Bold
- Barmeno-ExtraBold
- Barmeno-Medium
- Barmeno-Regular
- Blackoak
- Bodoni-Bold
- Bodoni-BoldItalic
- Bodoni-Italic
- Bodoni-Poster
- Bodoni-PosterCompressed
- Bodoni
- BodoniCE-Bold
- BodoniCE-BoldItalic
- BodoniCE-Italic
- BodoniCE-Poster
- BodoniCE-PosterCompressed
- BodoniCE
- Bookman-Demi
- Bookman-DemItalic
- Bookman-Light
- Bookman-LightItalic
- BookmanCE-Demi
- BookmanCE-DemItalic

- BookmanCE-Light
- BookmanCE-LightItalic
- Carta
- Chicago
- ChicagoCE
- Clarendon-Bold
- Clarendon-Light
- Clarendon
- ClarendonCE-Bold
- ClarendonCE-Light
- ClarendonCE
- CooperBlack-Italic
- CooperBlack
- Copperplate-ThirtyThreeBC
- Copperplate-ThirtyTwoBC
- Coronet-Regular
- CoronetCE-Regular
- Courier-Bold
- Courier-BoldOblique
- Courier-Oblique
- Courier
- CourierCE-Bold
- CourierCE-BoldOblique
- CourierCE-Oblique
- CourierCE
- Eurostile-Bold
- Eurostile-BoldExtendedTwo
- Eurostile-ExtendedTwo
- Eurostile
- EurostileCE-Bold
- EurostileCE-BoldExtendedTwo
- EurostileCE-ExtendedTwo
- EurostileCE
- Formata-Italic
- Formata-Medium
- Formata-MediumItalic
- Formata-Regular
- FutoGoB101-Bold-RKSJ-H
- FutoMinA101-Bold-RKSJ-H
- Geneva
- GenevaCE
- GillSans-Bold
- GillSans-BoldCondensed
- GillSans-BoldItalic
- GillSans-Condensed
- GillSans-ExtraBold
- GillSans-Italic
- GillSans-Light
- GillSans-LightItalic
- GillSans
- GillSansCE-Bold
- GillSansCE-BoldCondensed
- GillSansCE-BoldItalic
- GillSansCE-Condensed
- GillSansCE-ExtraBold
- GillSansCE-Italic
- GillSansCE-Light
- GillSansCE-LightItalic
- GillSansCE-Roman
- GothicBBB-Medium-RKSJ-H
- Goudy-Bold
- Goudy-BoldItalic
- Goudy-ExtraBold
- Goudy-Italic
- Goudy
- Helvetica-Bold
- Helvetica-BoldOblique
- Helvetica-Condensed-Bold
- Helvetica-Condensed-BoldOblique
- Helvetica-Condensed-Oblique
- Helvetica-Condensed
- Helvetica-Narrow-Bold
- Helvetica-Narrow-BoldOblique
- Helvetica-Narrow-Oblique
- Helvetica-Narrow
- Helvetica-Oblique
- Helvetica
- HelveticaCE-Bold
- HelveticaCE-BoldOblique
- HelveticaCE-Cond
- HelveticaCE-CondBold
- HelveticaCE-CondBoldOblique
- HelveticaCE-CondOblique
- HelveticaCE-Narrow
- HelveticaCE-NarrowBold
- HelveticaCE-NarrowBoldOblique

- HelveticaCE-NarrowOblique
- HelveticaCE-Oblique
- HelveticaCE
- HoeflerText-Black
- HoeflerText-BlackItalic
- HoeflerText-Italic
- HoeflerText-Ornaments
- HoeflerText-Regular
- HoeflerTextCE-Black
- HoeflerTextCE-BlackItalic
- HoeflerTextCE-Italic
- HoeflerTextCE-Regular
- JoannaMT-Bold
- JoannaMT-BoldItalic
- JoannaMT-Italic
- JoannaMT
- JoannaMTCE-Bold
- JoannaMTCE-BoldItalic
- JoannaMTCE-Italic
- JoannaMTCE
- Jun101-Light-RKSJ-H
- Kaufmann
- LetterGothic-Bold
- LetterGothic-BoldSlanted
- LetterGothic-Slanted
- LetterGothic
- LetterGothicCE-Bold
- LetterGothicCE-BoldSlanted
- LetterGothicCE-Slanted
- LetterGothicCE
- Lithos-Black
- Lithos-Regular
- LubalinGraph-Book
- LubalinGraph-BookOblique
- LubalinGraph-Demi
- LubalinGraph-DemiOblique
- LubalinGraphCE-Book
- LubalinGraphCE-BookOblique
- LubalinGraphCE-Demi
- LubalinGraphCE-DemiOblique
- Marigold
- MonaLisa-Recut
- Monaco
- MonacoCE
- NewCenturySchlbk-Bold
- NewCenturySchlbk-BoldItalic
- NewCenturySchlbk-Italic
- NewCenturySchlbk-Roman
- NewCenturySchlbkCE-Bold
- NewCenturySchlbkCE-BoldItalic
- NewCenturySchlbkCE-Italic
- NewCenturySchlbkCE-Roman
- NewYork
- NewYorkCE
- Optima-Bold
- Optima-BoldItalic
- Optima-Italic
- Optima
- OptimaCE-Bold
- OptimaCE-BoldItalic
- OptimaCE-Italic
- OptimaCE-Roman
- Oxford
- Palatino-Bold
- Palatino-BoldItalic
- Palatino-Italic
- Palatino-Roman
- PalatinoCE-Bold
- PalatinoCE-BoldItalic
- PalatinoCE-Italic
- PalatinoCE-Roman
- Parisian
- ParkAvenue
- Poetica-SuppOrnaments
- Ryumin-Light-RKSJ-H
- StempelGaramond-Bold
- StempelGaramond-BoldItalic
- StempelGaramond-Italic
- StempelGaramond-Roman
- StempelGaramondCE-Bold
- StempelGaramondCE-BoldItalic
- StempelGaramondCE-Italic
- StempelGaramondCE-Roman
- Symbol
- Tekton-Bold
- Tekton

-
- Times-Bold
 - Times-BoldItalic
 - Times-Italic
 - Times-Roman
 - TimesCE-Bold
 - TimesCE-BoldItalic
 - TimesCE-Italic
 - TimesCE-Roman
 - TimesNewRomanCE-Bold
 - TimesNewRomanCE-BoldItalic
 - TimesNewRomanCE-Italic
 - TimesNewRomanCE
 - TimesNewRomanPS-BoldItalicMT
 - TimesNewRomanPS-BoldMT
 - TimesNewRomanPS-ItalicMT
 - TimesNewRomanPSMT
 - Trajan-Bold
 - Univers-Bold
 - Univers-BoldExt
 - Univers-BoldExtObl
 - Univers-BoldOblique
 - Univers-Condensed
 - Univers-CondensedBold
 - Univers-CondensedBoldOblique
 - Univers-CondensedOblique
 - Univers-Extended
 - Univers-ExtendedObl
 - Univers-Light
 - Univers-LightOblique
 - Univers-Oblique
 - Univers
 - UniversCE-Bold
 - UniversCE-BoldExt
 - UniversCE-BoldExtObl
 - UniversCE-BoldOblique
 - UniversCE-Condensed
 - UniversCE-CondensedBold
 - UniversCE-CondensedBoldOblique
 - UniversCE-CondensedOblique
 - UniversCE-Extended
 - UniversCE-ExtendedObl
 - UniversCE-Light
 - UniversCE-LightOblique
 - UniversCE-Medium
 - UniversCE-Oblique
 - Wingdings-Regular
 - WoodtypeOrnaments-Two
 - ZapfChancery-MediumItalic
 - ZapfChanceryCE-MediumItalic
 - ZapfDingbats
 - Document Centre 506/606/706
 - Document Centre 235/285/405
 - AlbertusMT
 - AlbertusMT-Italic
 - AlbertusMT-Light
 - AntiqueOlive-Bold
 - AntiqueOlive-Compact
 - AntiqueOlive-Italic
 - AntiqueOlive-Roman
 - Apple-Chancery
 - Arial-BoldItalicMT
 - Arial-BoldMT
 - Arial-ItalicMT
 - ArialMT
 - AvantGarde-Book
 - AvantGarde-BookOblique
 - AvantGarde-Demi
 - AvantGarde-DemiOblique
 - Bodoni
 - Bodoni-Bold
 - Bodoni-BoldItalic
 - Bodoni-Italic
 - Bodoni-Poster
 - Bodoni-PosterCompressed
 - Bookman-Demi
 - Bookman-Demitalic
 - Bookman-Light
 - Bookman-LightItalic
 - Carta
 - Chicago
 - Clarendon
 - Clarendon-Bold
 - Clarendon-Light
 - CooperBlack
 - CooperBlack-Italic
 - Copperplate-ThirtyThreeBC
-

- Copperplate-ThirtyTwoBC
- Coronet-Regular
- Courier
- Courier-Bold
- Courier-BoldOblique
- Courier-Oblique
- Eurostile
- Eurostile-Bold
- Eurostile-BoldExtendedTwo
- Eurostile-ExtendedTwo
- Geneva
- GillSans
- GillSans-Bold
- GillSans-BoldCondensed
- GillSans-BoldItalic
- GillSans-Condensed
- GillSans-ExtraBold
- GillSans-Italic
- GillSans-Light
- GillSans-LightItalic
- Goudy
- Goudy-Bold
- Goudy-BoldItalic
- Goudy-ExtraBold
- Goudy-Italic
- GothicBBB-Medium-RKSJ-H
- HeiseiKakuGo-W5-RKSJ-H
- HeiseiMaruGo-W4-RKSJ-H
- HeiseiMin-W3-RKSJ-H
- Helvetica
- Helvetica-Bold
- Helvetica-BoldOblique
- Helvetica-Condensed
- Helvetica-Condensed-Bold
- Helvetica-Condensed-BoldOblique
- Helvetica-Condensed-Oblique
- Helvetica-Narrow
- Helvetica-Narrow-Bold
- Helvetica-Narrow-BoldOblique
- Helvetica-Narrow-Oblique
- Helvetica-Oblique
- HoeflerText-Black
- HoeflerText-BlackItalic
- HoeflerText-Italic
- HoeflerText-Ornaments
- HoeflerText-Regular
- JoannaMT
- JoannaMT-Bold
- JoannaMT-BoldItalic
- JoannaMT-Italic
- LetterGothic
- LetterGothic-Bold
- LetterGothic-BoldSlanted
- LetterGothic-Slanted
- LubalinGraph-Book
- LubalinGraph-BookOblique
- LubalinGraph-Demi
- LubalinGraph-DemiOblique
- Marigold
- Monaco
- MonaLisa-Recut
- NewCenturySchlbk-Bold
- NewCenturySchlbk-BoldItalic
- NewCenturySchlbk-Italic
- NewCenturySchlbk-Roman
- NewYork
- Optima
- Optima-Bold
- Optima-BoldItalic
- Optima-Italic
- Oxford
- Palatino-Bold
- Palatino-BoldItalic
- Palatino-Italic
- Palatino-Roman
- Ryumin-Light-RKSJ-H
- StempelGaramond-Bold
- StempelGaramond-BoldItalic
- StempelGaramond-Italic
- StempelGaramond-Roman
- Symbol
- Tekton
- Times-Bold
- Times-BoldItalic
- Times-Italic
- TimesNewRomanPS-BoldItalicMT

- TimesNewRomanPS-BoldMT
- TimesNewRomanPS-ItalicMT
- TimesNewRomanPSMT
- Times-Roman
- Univers
- Univers-Bold
- Univers-BoldExt
- Univers-BoldExtObl
- Univers-BoldOblique
- Univers-Condensed
- Univers-CondensedBold
- Univers-CondensedBoldOblique
- Univers-CondensedOblique
- Univers-Extended
- Univers-ExtendedObl
- Univers-Light
- Univers-LightOblique
- Univers-Oblique
- Wingdings-Regular
- ZapfChancery-MediumItalic
- ZapfDingbats
- DocuPrint 205/255/305
- DocuPrint 240A/340A
- Document Centre 1085/1055/186/156
- Document Centre 286/236
- Document Centre 1100/900
- Document Centre 336
- DocuCentre 550 I/450 I
- DocuCentre 750 I/650 I
- ApeosPort 550 I/450 I/350 I
- ApeosPort 750 I/650 I
- DocuCentre-II 3005/2055/2005
- AlbertusMT
- AlbertusMT-Italic
- AlbertusMT-Light
- AntiqueOlive-Bold
- AntiqueOlive-Compact
- AntiqueOlive-Italic
- AntiqueOlive-Roman
- Apple-Chancery
- Arial-BoldItalicMT
- Arial-BoldMT
- Arial-ItalicMT
- ArialMT
- AvantGarde-Book
- AvantGarde-BookOblique
- AvantGarde-Demi
- AvantGarde-DemiOblique
- Bodoni
- Bodoni-Bold
- Bodoni-BoldItalic
- Bodoni-Italic
- Bodoni-Poster
- Bodoni-PosterCompressed
- Bookman-Demi
- Bookman-Demibold
- Bookman-Light
- Bookman-LightItalic
- Carta
- Chicago
- Clarendon
- Clarendon-Bold
- Clarendon-Light
- CooperBlack
- CooperBlack-Italic
- Copperplate-ThirtyThreeBC
- Copperplate-ThirtyTwoBC
- Coronet-Regular
- Courier
- Courier-Bold
- Courier-BoldOblique
- Courier-Oblique
- Eurostile
- Eurostile-Bold
- Eurostile-BoldExtendedTwo
- Eurostile-ExtendedTwo
- Geneva
- GillSans
- GillSans-Bold
- GillSans-BoldCondensed
- GillSans-BoldItalic
- GillSans-Condensed
- GillSans-ExtraBold
- GillSans-Italic
- GillSans-Light
- GillSans-LightItalic

- Goudy
- Goudy-Bold
- Goudy-BoldItalic
- Goudy-ExtraBold
- Goudy-Italic
- GothicBBB-Medium-RKSJ-H
- HeiseiKakuGo-W5-RKSJ-H
- HeiseiMaruGo-W4-RKSJ-H
- HeiseiMin-W3-RKSJ-H
- Helvetica
- Helvetica-Bold
- Helvetica-BoldOblique
- Helvetica-Condensed
- Helvetica-Condensed-Bold
- Helvetica-Condensed-BoldOblique
- Helvetica-Condensed-Oblique
- Helvetica-Narrow
- Helvetica-Narrow-Bold
- Helvetica-Narrow-BoldOblique
- Helvetica-Narrow-Oblique
- Helvetica-Oblique
- HoeflerText-Black
- HoeflerText-BlackItalic
- HoeflerText-Italic
- HoeflerText-Ornaments
- HoeflerText-Regular
- JoannaMT
- JoannaMT-Bold
- JoannaMT-BoldItalic
- JoannaMT-Italic
- LetterGothic
- LetterGothic-Bold
- LetterGothic-BoldSlanted
- LetterGothic-Slanted
- LubalinGraph-Book
- LubalinGraph-BookOblique
- LubalinGraph-Demi
- LubalinGraph-DemiOblique
- Marigold
- Monaco
- MonaLisa-Recut
- NewCenturySchlbk-Bold
- NewCenturySchlbk-BoldItalic
- NewCenturySchlbk-Italic
- NewCenturySchlbk-Roman
- NewYork
- OCRBLetM
- Optima
- Optima-Bold
- Optima-BoldItalic
- Optima-Italic
- Oxford
- Palatino-Bold
- Palatino-BoldItalic
- Palatino-Italic
- Palatino-Roman
- Ryumin-Light-RKSJ-H
- StempelGaramond-Bold
- StempelGaramond-BoldItalic
- StempelGaramond-Italic
- StempelGaramond-Roman
- Symbol
- Tekton
- Times-Bold
- Times-BoldItalic
- Times-Italic
- TimesNewRomanPS-BoldItalicMT
- TimesNewRomanPS-BoldMT
- TimesNewRomanPS-ItalicMT
- TimesNewRomanPSMT
- Times-Roman
- Univers
- Univers-Bold
- Univers-BoldExt
- Univers-BoldExtOblique
- Univers-BoldOblique
- Univers-Condensed
- Univers-CondensedBold
- Univers-CondensedBoldOblique
- Univers-CondensedOblique
- Univers-Extended
- Univers-ExtendedOblique
- Univers-Light
- Univers-LightOblique
- Univers-Oblique
- Wingdings-Regular

- ZapfChancery-MediumItalic
- ZapfDingbats

C Uninstalling the UNIX Driver

The UNIX Driver does not come with an uninstaller. To uninstall the UNIX Driver, carry out the following procedure.

Important Log on as a power user to perform the operation. Request the system administrator to perform the operation if you do not have the rights of a power user.

C.1 Linux

- (1) Delete all the directories that store the UNIX drivers during installation and the files in these directories. The directories to be deleted are as follows.

<code>/usr/local/fxbin</code>	
<code>/usr/local/fxbin205</code>	(DocuPrint 205/255/305)
<code>/usr/local/fxbin240A</code>	(DocuPrint 240A/340A)
<code>/usr/local/fxetc</code>	
<code>/usr/local/fxetc205</code>	(DocuPrint 205/255/305)
<code>/usr/local/fxetc240A</code>	(DocuPrint 240A/340A)
<code>/usr/lib/fxps</code>	
<code>/usr/lib/fxps205</code>	(DocuPrint 205/255/305)
<code>/usr/lib/fxps240A</code>	(DocuPrint 240A/340A)

The above directories are standard directories created during installation. If you specified other directories during installation, delete those directories.

- (2) Delete the descriptions for each printer from `/etc/printcap`.

C.2 Solaris

- (1) Delete the printer that was registered with the system. Use the printer name created during the installation and the lpadmin command.

```
# lpadmin -x printername
```

- (2) Delete the filters registered with the system. Delete the filters registered during installation using the lpfilter command.

```
# lpfilter -f FXDC250 -x      (Document Centre 250/350/400)
# lpfilter -f FXDC451 -x      (Document Centre 451/551)
# lpfilter -f FXDC506 -x      (Document Centre 506/606/706)
# lpfilter -f FXDC235 -x      (Document Centre 235/285/405)
# lpfilter -f FXDC186 -x      (Document Centre 1085/1055/186/156)
# lpfilter -f FXDC286 -x      (Document Centre 286/236)
# lpfilter -f FXDC1100 -x     (Document Centre 1100/900)
# lpfilter -f FXDC336 -x      (Document Centre 336)
# lpfilter -f FXDC550I -x     (DocuCentre 550 I/450 I)
# lpfilter -f FXDC750I -x     (DocuCentre 750 I/650 I)
# lpfilter -f FXDP205 -x      (DocuPrint 205/255/305)
# lpfilter -f FXDP240A -x     (DocuPrint 240A/340A)
# lpfilter -f FXAP550I -x     (ApeosPort 550 I/450 I/350 I)
# lpfilter -f FXAP750I -x     (ApeosPort 750 I/650 I)
# lpfilter -f FXDC23005 -x    (DocuCentre-II 3005/2055/2005)
# lpfilter -f FXAP24000 -x    (DocuCentre-II 5010/4000/3000)
# lpfilter -f FXAP27000 -x    (DocuCentre-II 7000/6000)
# lpfilter -f FXDC24000 -x    (DocuCentre-II 5010/4000)
# lpfilter -f FXDC27000 -x    (DocuCentre-II 7000/6000)
# lpfilter -f FXdownload -x
# lpfilter -f FXpostio -x
# lpfilter -f posteuc -x
```

- (3) Delete the symbolic files required to call up the filter.

Delete the following files from /usr/lib/lp/postscript.

```
posteuc      (Mono)
posteucSP    (MonoSP)
posteuc205   (Mono2)
posteuc240A  (DP240A)
postfxps     (Mono)
postfxpsSP   (MonoSP)
postfxps205  (Mono2)
postfxps240A (DP240A)
fxbinpath    (Mono)
fxbinpathSP  (MonoSP)
```

fxbinpath205	(Mono2)
fxbinpath240A	(DP240A)

- (4) If you are running Solaris 2.6 or later, delete the interface program files of "Selected printer type name" from /usr/lib/lp/model.

Delete also the interface program files of "Registered printer name" from /etc/lp/interfaces.

- (5) Delete all the directories that store the UNIX drivers during installation and the files in these directories. The directories to be deleted are as follows.

/usr/local/fxbin	(Mono)
/usr/local/fxbinSP	(MonoSP)
/usr/local/fxbin205	(Mono2)
/usr/local/fxbin240A	(DP240A)

- (6) Delete the filter description files. Delete the following files from /etc/lp/fd.

Filter description files for various printers

FXdownload.fd	(Mono)
FXdownloadSP.fd	(MonoSP)
FXdownload205.fd	(Mono2)
FXdownload240A.fd	(DP240A)
FXpostio.fd	(Mono)
FXpostioSP.fd	(MonoSP)
FXpostio205.fd	(Mono2)
FXpostio240A.fd	(DP240A)
posteuc.fd	(Mono)
posteucSP.fd	(MonoSP)
posteuc205.fd	(Mono2)
posteuc240A.fd	(DP240A)

The following are inherent files for various models.

FXDC250.fd	(Document Centre 250/350/400)
FXDC451.fd	(Document Centre 451/551)
FXDC506.fd	(Document Centre 506/606/706)
FXDC235.fd	(Document Centre 235/285/405)
FXDC186.fd	(Document Centre 1085/1055/186/156)
FXDC286.fd	(Document Centre 286/236)
FXDC1100.fd	(Document Centre 1100/900)
FXDC336.fd	(Document Centre 336)
FXDC550I.fd	(DocuCentre 550 I/450 I)
FXDC750I.fd	(DocuCentre 750 I/650 I)
FXDP205.fd	(DocuPrint 205/255/305)
FXDP240A.fd	(DocuPrint 240A/340A)
FXAP550I.fd	(ApeosPort 550 I/450 I/350 I)
FXAP750I.fd	(ApeosPort 750 I/650 I)
FXDC23005.fd	(DocuCentre-II 3005/2055/2005)
FXAP24000.fd	(DocuCentre-II 5010/4000/3000)

FXAP27000.fid	(DocuCentre-II 7000/6000)
FXDC24000.fid	(DocuCentre-II 5010/4000)
FXDC27000.fid	(DocuCentre-II 7000/6000)

C.3 HP-UX

- (1) Delete the printer that was registered with the system. Use the SAM command to delete the printer set up during the installation.

```
# sam
```

- (2) Delete all the directories that store the UNIX drivers during installation and the files in these directories. The directories to be deleted are as follows.

```
/usr/local/fxbin      (Mono)
/usr/local/fxbin205    (Mono2)
/usr/local/fxbin240A   (DP240A)
(Directory specified during installation)
```

Glossary

EUC Text File

An EUC text file that is written in the Extended UNIX Code (EUC).

PostScript Language Program

A program written in the PostScript language.

printcap File

This file registers the printer and defines the attributes of respective printers.

SunRaster File

This is the image file created in the bitmap image format that is widely used in SunOS.

TIFF File

This is the image file created in the bitmap image format that is widely used in the field of image processing.

XWD File

This is the image file created in the bitmap image format that is widely used in the X Window system.

Power User

This is a user with "root" as the login name and has the rights to manage the machine.

Remote Printer

A remote printer is one used from a remote workstation.

Remote Workstation

A remote workstation is located on the network

but not connected to the printer by a serial cable.

Local Printer

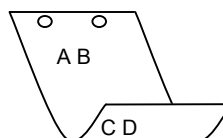
A local printer is one used from a local workstation.

Local Workstation

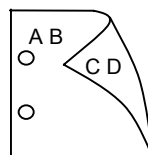
A local workstation is one which is connected to the printer by a serial cable.

2 Sided Print with Flip on Short Edge

This is the 2 Sided Print feature with the binding feature implemented on the shorter edge of the pages.

**2 Sided Print with Flip on Long Edge**

This is the 2 Sided Print feature with the binding feature implemented on the longer edge of the pages.



Index

C

Common Options57
Contents of the Package7

E

environment variable EUC2PSOPTION. 114
environment variable LANG30, 39
environment variable LPDEST54
environment variable PRINTER51, 55
error log file27
Error Messages47
euc2ps218
euc2ps2/txt2ps2113
EUC2PSOPTION114, 124, 125

F

font114, 292
FXAP550I.fd260
FXAP750I.fd267
FXDC1100.fd247
FXDC186.fd234
FXDC23005.fd275
FXDC235.fd221
FXDC250.fd209
FXDC286.fd240
FXDC336.fd253
FXDC451.fd213
FXDC506.fd216
FXDC550I.fd260
FXDC750I.fd267
FXDP205.fd225
FXDP240A.fd230
fxoption196
fxpg4f192
fxpif186
fxpof194
fxpvf190

I

Installation Procedure (HP-UX)43

L

LANG44
local workstation20, 304
logical printer55

O

Operating Environment3
Operation at the Local Workstation (Linux)
.....21
Operation at the Local Workstation (Solaris)
.....30
Operation at the Remote Workstation (Linux)
.....35
Operation at the Remote Workstation
(Solaris)38

P

posteuc.fd201, 203
posteuc205.fd205
posttxt240A.fd207
Prerequisites for Installation11
print operations51, 54, 55
printcap25, 29, 304
Printing from Solaris 2.x54

R

remote workstation20, 304

S

Setting Up a Local Printer27, 31
Setting up from the Control Panel6
Setting Up the Remote Printer36, 40
spool directory27
sunras2g4137
sunras2ps2126

T

Target Printers4
tiff2g418, 157
tiff2ps218, 146

txt2ps2 18

U

uninstalling..... 300

UNIX Driver 3

userhomedir..... 199

Using Solaris 2.4 or Later 291

Using the Sample Script.....291

Utility Overview.....109

X

xwd2g4.....18, 177

xwd2ps218, 166

For Solaris, HP-UX, Red Hat Linux
Utility software for PostScript® printers UNIX Driver User Guide Released by Fuji Xerox Asia Pacific Pte Ltd
Author ©Copyright 2008 by Fuji Xerox Asia Pacific Pte Ltd

The contents of this Manual may be revised without prior notice.
